

# Fedora 11

## 安装指南

在x86, AMD64及Intel® 64 架构上安装Fedora 11



Fedora 文档项目

## Fedora 11 安装指南

### 在x86, AMD64及Intel® 64 架构上安装Fedora 11

### 版 1.0

作者

Fedora 文档项目

[fedora-docs-list@redhat.com](mailto:fedora-docs-list@redhat.com)

版权 © 2009 Red Hat, Inc. and others

Copyright © 2009 Red Hat, Inc. and others. This material may only be distributed subject to the terms and conditions set forth in the Open Publication License, V1.0, (the latest version is presently available at <http://www.opencontent.org/openpub/>).

Fedora and the Fedora Infinity Design logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc., in the U.S. and other countries.

Red Hat and the Red Hat "Shadow Man" logo are registered trademarks of Red Hat Inc. in the United States and other countries.

All other trademarks and copyrights referred to are the property of their respective owners.

Documentation, as with software itself, may be subject to export control. Read about Fedora Project export controls at <http://fedoraproject.org/wiki/Legal/Export>.

提供安装过程文档

---

Preface	xi
1. 文档约定	xi
1.1. 排版约定	xi
1.2. 抬升式引用约定	xii
1.3. 备注及警告	xiii
2. 我们需要您的反馈!	xiii
简介	xv
1. 背景	xv
1.1. 关于 Fedora	xv
1.2. 取得更多的帮助	xv
2. 关于这份文档	xv
2.1. 目标	xv
2.2. 读者	xv
1. 进阶者指南	1
1.1. 概观	1
1.2. 下载文件	1
1.3. 安装前准备	1
1.4. 安装 Fedora	2
1.5. 安装后设置	2
2. 初学者	3
2.1. 如何下载 Fedora?	3
2.1.1. 从映像点站	3
2.1.2. 从 BitTorrent	4
2.2. 我的电脑属于哪一种架构?	4
2.3. 我需要下载哪个文件?	5
2.4. 如何制作 Fedora 媒体	6
2.4.1. 制作 CD 和 DVD 光盘	6
2.4.2. 制作 USB 介质	6
2.5. 为什么我不能下载 Fedora?	7
2.6. 我如何才能启动安装程序?	7
I. Before you begin	9
3. 安装前的准备工作	11
3.1. 选择升级还是安装?	11
3.2. 您的硬件兼容吗?	11
3.3. 你有足够的磁盘空间吗?	11
3.4. 您可以使用光盘安装吗?	11
3.4.1. 其它引导方法	12
3.4.2. 制作安装引导光盘	12
3.5. 筹备网络安装	12
3.5.1. 筹备 FTP 和 HTTP 安装	13
3.5.2. 筹备 NFS 安装	13
3.6. 筹备硬盘驱动器安装	14
4. System Specifications List	15
5. 用于 Intel 或 AMD 系统的驱动介质	17
5.1. 为什么需要驱动程序盘	17
5.2. 驱动程序介质到底是什么?	17
5.3. 如何获取驱动程序介质	17

5.3.1. 根据映像文件创建驱动程序盘 .....	17
5.4. 在安装过程中使用驱动程序映像 .....	18
II. The installation process .....	19
6. 开始安装 .....	21
6.1. 启动选单 .....	21
6.2. 从另一个不同的源安装 .....	22
6.3. 正在检查介质 .....	22
6.3.1. 正在检查 Live CD .....	22
6.3.2. 正在检查 DVD .....	22
6.4. 使用 PXE 从网络启动 .....	22
6.5. 图形和文本界面 .....	23
7. Installing on Intel and AMD Systems .....	25
7.1. The Graphical Installation Program User Interface .....	25
7.1.1. A Note about Virtual Consoles .....	25
7.2. 文本模式安装程序用户界面 .....	26
7.2.1. 使用键盘来导航 .....	28
7.3. Starting the Installation Program .....	28
7.3.1. Booting the Installation Program on x86, AMD64, and Intel 64 Systems .....	29
7.3.2. Additional Boot Options .....	30
7.4. 选择安装方法 .....	31
7.5. 从光盘中安装 .....	32
7.5.1. 如果没有发现 IDE 光盘怎么办? .....	32
7.6. 从硬盘安装 .....	33
7.7. 执行网络安装 .....	34
7.8. 通过 NFS 安装 .....	35
7.9. Installing via FTP or HTTP .....	35
7.10. 欢迎使用 .....	36
7.11. Language Selection .....	37
7.12. Keyboard Configuration .....	38
7.13. Initializing the Hard Disk .....	39
7.14. 升级已有的系统 .....	40
7.14.1. 升级检测 .....	40
7.14.2. 使用安装程序升级 .....	41
7.14.3. 更新引导加载程序 .....	42
7.15. Network Configuration .....	42
7.15.1. Manual configuration .....	44
7.16. 时区配置 .....	44
7.17. 设置根密码 .....	46
7.18. Disk Partitioning Setup .....	47
7.18.1. RAID and Other Disk Devices .....	49
7.19. Advanced Storage Options .....	49
7.20. Create Default Layout .....	50
7.21. 为您的系统分区 .....	52
7.21.1. 硬盘的图形化表示 .....	53
7.21.2. The partitioning screen .....	53
7.21.3. 分区字段 .....	57
7.21.4. 推荐的分区方案 .....	58
7.21.5. 添加分区 .....	61
7.21.6. 编辑分区 .....	63

7.21.7. 删除分区 .....	63
7.22. x86、AMD64 和 Intel 64 系统的引导装载程序 (Boot Loader) 的配置 .....	64
7.22.1. 高级引导装载程序配置 .....	66
7.22.2. Rescue Mode .....	67
7.22.3. 其它可选的引导装载程序 .....	67
7.23. Package Group Selection .....	68
7.23.1. Installing from Additional Repositories .....	69
7.23.2. Customizing the Software Selection .....	71
7.24. 准备安装 .....	73
7.24.1. 准备安装 .....	73
7.25. Installing Packages .....	73
7.26. 安装完成 .....	73
8. 在 Intel 或 AMD 系统上进行安装的故障解除 .....	75
8.1. You are unable to boot Fedora .....	75
8.1.1. 无法使用 RAID 卡来引导 .....	75
8.1.2. 系统显示了信号 11 错误 .....	75
8.2. 安装起始部分的问题 .....	76
8.2.1. Problems with Booting into the Graphical Installation .....	76
8.3. 安装过程中的问题 .....	76
8.3.1. No devices found to install Fedora Error Message .....	76
8.3.2. Saving traceback messages without removeable media .....	76
8.3.3. Trouble with Partition Tables .....	76
8.3.4. 使用剩余空间 .....	77
8.3.5. 其它分区问题 .....	77
8.3.6. 看到 Python 错误 .....	77
8.4. 安装后的问题 .....	78
8.4.1. 在 x86 系统的 GRUB 图形化屏幕中遇到问题 .....	78
8.4.2. 引导入图形环境 .....	78
8.4.3. 引导入 X 窗口系统 (GUI) 的问题 .....	79
8.4.4. X 服务器崩溃和非根用户的问题 .....	79
8.4.5. 登录时的问题 .....	80
8.4.6. 你的内存不能够被识别吗? .....	80
8.4.7. 您的打印机无法工作 .....	81
8.4.8. 配置声卡遇到问题 .....	81
8.4.9. 基于 Apache httpd 的服务/Sendmail 在启动时挂起 .....	81
III. Advanced installation options .....	83
9. 启动选项 .....	85
9.1. 在启动菜单下配置安装系统 .....	85
9.1.1. 指定语言 .....	85
9.1.2. 配置界面 .....	86
9.1.3. 更新anaconda .....	86
9.1.4. 指定安装方法 .....	86
9.1.5. 手动配置网络设置 .....	87
9.2. 允许远程访问安装系统 .....	87
9.2.1. 允许用 VNC 远程访问 .....	87
9.2.2. 连接安装系统到一个 VNC 监听程序 .....	88
9.2.3. 允许用 Telnet 远程访问 .....	88
9.3. 在安装期间记录日志到远程主机 .....	89
9.3.1. 配置服务器日志 .....	89

9.4. 使用 Kickstart 实现自动安装 .....	90
9.5. 增强的硬件支持 .....	91
9.5.1. 用驱动磁盘支持增加的硬件 .....	91
9.5.2. 越过自动硬件检测 .....	91
9.6. 用维修引导模式 .....	92
9.6.1. 加载内存 (RAM) 检测模式 .....	92
9.6.2. 验证启动介质 .....	93
9.6.3. 以修复模式引导您的计算机 .....	93
9.6.4. 升级您的计算机 .....	93
10. 无介质的安装 .....	95
10.1. 搜索引导文件 .....	95
10.2. 编辑 GRUB 配置 .....	95
10.3. 引导安装 .....	96
11. 配置一个安装服务器 .....	97
11.1. 配置cobbler .....	97
11.2. 设置发布目录 .....	98
11.3. 映射网络位置 .....	98
11.4. 导入发行版 .....	99
11.5. Manually configure a PXE server .....	100
11.5.1. Setting up the Network Server .....	100
11.5.2. PXE Boot Configuration .....	100
11.5.3. Adding PXE Hosts .....	100
11.5.4. TFTP .....	102
11.5.5. 配置 DHCP 服务器 .....	102
11.5.6. Adding a Custom Boot Message .....	102
11.5.7. Performing the PXE Installation .....	102
12. Installing Through VNC .....	103
12.1. VNC Viewer .....	103
12.2. VNC Modes in Anaconda .....	104
12.2.1. Direct Mode .....	104
12.2.2. Connect Mode .....	104
12.3. Installation Using VNC .....	105
12.3.1. Installation Example .....	105
12.3.2. Kickstart Considerations .....	106
12.3.3. 关于防火墙 .....	106
12.4. References .....	106
13. kickstart 安装 .....	107
13.1. kickstart 安装是什么? .....	107
13.2. 如何执行 kickstart 安装 .....	107
13.3. 创建 kickstart 文件 .....	107
13.4. kickstart 选项 .....	108
13.4.1. 高级的分区示例 .....	125
13.5. Package Selection .....	126
13.6. 预安装脚本 .....	127
13.6.1. 范例 .....	127
13.7. 安装后脚本 .....	128
13.7.1. 范例 .....	129
13.8. 如何使 kickstart 文件可被利用 .....	129
13.8.1. 创建 kickstart 引导介质 .....	130

13.8.2. 在网络上提供 Kickstart 文件 .....	130
13.9. 提供安装树 .....	131
13.10. 开始 kickstart 安装 .....	131
14. Kickstart Configurator .....	137
14.1. 基本配置 .....	138
14.2. 安装方法 .....	140
14.3. 引导装载程序选项 .....	142
14.4. 分区信息 .....	144
14.4.1. 创建分区 .....	145
14.5. Network Configuration .....	149
14.6. 验证 .....	150
14.7. 防火墙配置 .....	151
14.7.1. SELinux 配置 .....	153
14.8. 显示配置 .....	153
14.9. Package Selection .....	155
14.10. 预安装脚本 .....	156
14.11. 安装后脚本 .....	158
14.11.1. chroot 环境 .....	159
14.11.2. 使用解释器 .....	159
14.12. 保存文件 .....	159
IV. After installation .....	161
15. Firstboot .....	163
15.1. 许可协议 .....	163
15.2. 系统用户 .....	164
15.3. 日期和时间 .....	165
15.4. 硬件侧写 .....	168
16. 下一步做什么 .....	169
16.1. 更新您的系统 .....	169
16.2. 完成升级 .....	170
16.3. 切换到图形登录 .....	171
16.4. 订阅 Fedora 通告和新闻 .....	171
16.5. 查找文档和支持 .....	172
16.6. 加入 Fedora 社区 .....	172
17. 基本系统恢复 .....	173
17.1. 常见问题 .....	173
17.1.1. Unable to Boot into Fedora .....	173
17.1.2. 硬件或软件问题 .....	173
17.1.3. Root Password .....	173
17.2. 引导救援模式 .....	173
17.2.1. 重新安装引导装载程序 .....	175
17.3. 引导单用户模式 .....	176
17.4. 引导紧急模式 .....	176
18. 升级你当前的系统 .....	177
18.1. 选择升级还是重新安装 .....	177
18.2. 给你的系统升级 .....	178
19. Removing Fedora .....	179
19.1. Fedora is the only operating system on the computer .....	179

19.2. Your computer dual-boots Fedora and another operating system .....	180
19.2.1. Your computer dual-boots Fedora and a Microsoft Windows operating system .....	180
19.2.2. Your computer dual-boots Fedora and Mac OS X .....	184
19.2.3. Your computer dual-boots Fedora and a different Linux distribution .....	184
19.3. Replacing Fedora with MS-DOS or legacy versions of Microsoft Windows .....	188
V. Technical appendixes .....	191
A. 磁盘分区简介 .....	193
A.1. 硬盘基本概念 .....	193
A.1.1. 不是你写入什么，而是你怎么写入 .....	193
A.1.2. 分区：将一个驱动器变成多个驱动器 .....	194
A.1.3. 分区内的分区 — 扩展分区概述 .....	196
A.1.4. Making Room For Fedora .....	197
A.1.5. 分区命名方案 .....	201
A.1.6. 磁盘分区以及其它操作系统 .....	201
A.1.7. 磁盘分区和挂载点 .....	202
A.1.8. 多少个分区？ .....	202
B. iSCSI disks .....	203
B.1. iSCSI disks in anaconda .....	203
B.2. iSCSI disks during start up .....	203
C. 磁盘加密向导 .....	205
C.1. 什么是块设备加密？ .....	205
C.2. 使用dm-crypt/LUKS加密块设备 .....	205
C.2.1. LUKS概要 .....	205
C.2.2. 安装完成后我如何访问加密的设备？(系统启动) .....	206
C.2.3. 选择一个安全性好的密码 .....	206
C.3. 在Anaconda中创建加密块设备 .....	206
C.3.1. 可以加密什么类型的块设备？ .....	206
C.3.2. Anaconda块设备加密支持的限制 .....	207
C.4. 安装完成后在系统上创建加密的块设备。 .....	207
C.4.1. 创建块设备 .....	207
C.4.2. 可选项：使用随机数据填充设备 .....	207
C.4.3. 将设备格式化为dm-crypt/LUKS加密设备 .....	207
C.4.4. 创建一个映射来允许访问设备中未加密的内容 .....	208
C.4.5. Create filesystems on the mapped device, or continue to build complex storage structures using the mapped device .....	208
C.4.6. Add the mapping information to /etc/crypttab .....	209
C.4.7. Add an entry to /etc/fstab .....	209
C.5. Common Post-Installation Tasks .....	209
C.5.1. Set a randomly generated key as an additional way to access an encrypted block device .....	209
C.5.2. Add a new passphrase to an existing device .....	210
C.5.3. Remove a passphrase or key from a device .....	210
D. Understanding LVM .....	211
E. GRUB 引导装载程序 .....	213
E.1. GRUB .....	213
E.1.1. GRUB 和 x86 引导过程 .....	213



---

E.1.2. GRUB 的特征 .....	214
E.2. Installing GRUB .....	214
E.3. GRUB 术语 .....	214
E.3.1. 设备名 .....	214
E.3.2. 文件名和块列表 (Blocklist) .....	215
E.3.3. 根文件系统和 GRUB .....	216
E.4. GRUB 界面 .....	216
E.4.1. 界面装载顺序 .....	217
E.5. GRUB 命令 .....	217
E.6. GRUB 菜单配置文件 .....	218
E.6.1. 配置文件结构 .....	219
E.6.2. 配置文件指令 .....	219
E.7. 在引导时改变运行级别 .....	220
E.8. 其它资料 .....	220
E.8.1. 安装了文档 .....	221
E.8.2. 有用的网站 .....	221
E.8.3. 相关书籍 .....	221
F. 引导过程、初始化和关闭 .....	223
F.1. 引导过程 .....	223
F.2. 对引导过程的详细介绍 .....	223
F.2.1. BIOS .....	223
F.2.2. 引导装载程序 .....	224
F.2.3. 内核 .....	224
F.2.4. /sbin/init 程序 .....	225
F.3. 在引导时运行其他的程序 .....	228
F.4. SysV Init 运行级别 .....	228
F.4.1. 运行级别 .....	228
F.4.2. 运行级别工具 .....	229
F.5. 关机 .....	229
G. 其他技术文档 .....	231
H. Contributors and production methods .....	233
H.1. 贡献者 .....	233
H.2. Production methods .....	236
I. Revision History .....	237
索引 .....	239



---

# Preface

## 1. 文档约定

本手册使用几个约定来突出某些用词和短语以及信息的某些片段。

在 PDF 版本以及纸版中，本手册使用在 [Liberation](https://fedorahosted.org/liberation-fonts/)<sup>1</sup> 套件中选出的字体。如果您在您的系统中安装了 Liberation 字体套件，它还可用于 HTML 版本。如果没有安装，则会显示可替换的类似字体。请注意：红帽企业 Linux 5 以及其后的版本默认包含 Liberation 字体套件。

### 1.1. 排版约定

我们使用四种排版约定突出特定用词和短语。这些约定及其使用环境如下。

#### 固定粗体

用来突出系统输入，其中包括 shell 命令、文件名以及路径。还可用来突出按键以及组合键。例如：

要看到文件您当前工作目录中文件 `my_next_bestselling_novel` 的内容，请在 shell 提示符后输入 `cat my_next_bestselling_novel` 命令并按 Enter 键执行该命令。

以上内容包括一个文件名，一个 shell 命令以及一个按键，它们都以固定粗体形式出现，且全部与上下文有所区别。

组合键可通过使用连字符连接组合键的每个部分来与按键区别。例如：

按 Enter 执行该命令。

按 Ctrl+Alt+F1 切换到第一个虚拟终端。Ctrl+Alt+F7 返回您的 X-Windows 会话。

第一句突出的是要按的特定按键。第二句突出了两个三按键组合，每个组合都要同时按下。

如果讨论的是源码、等级名称、方法、功能、变量名称以及在段落中提到的返回的数值，那么都会以上述形式出现，即固定粗体。例如：

与文件相关的等级包括用于文件系统的 `filesystem`、用于文件的 `file` 以及用于目录的 `dir`。每个等级都有其自身相关的权限。

#### 比例宽度粗体

这是指在系统中遇到的文字或者短语，其中包括应用程序名称、对话框文本、标记的按钮、复选框以及单选按钮标签、菜单标题以及子菜单标题。例如：在主菜单栏中

选择 系统 > 属性 > 鼠标启动 Mouse Preferences。在 按钮 标签中点击惯用左手鼠标复选框并点击 关闭 将首选鼠标按键从左切换到右（让鼠标适合左手使用）。

要在 `gedit` 文件中插入一个特殊字符，请在主菜单栏中选择 应用程序 > 附件 > 字符映射表。下面请在字符映射表 主菜单栏中选择 搜索 > 查找...，在搜索 字段输入字符名称，并点击 下一个。那么会在 字符表中突出您看到的字符。双击该字符将其放置于要复制的文本字段并点击 复制 按钮。现在返回您的文档，在 `gedit` 菜单栏选择 编辑 > 粘贴。

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://fedorahosted.org/liberation-fonts/>

以上文本包括应用程序名称、系统范围菜单名称及项目、特定应用程序菜单名称以及按钮和 GUI 界面中的文本，所有都以比例粗体出现并与上下文区别。

请注意在菜单及其子菜单中用来表示穿越的 `>`。这是为了避免使用比较复杂的方法，比如‘在主菜单的系统 菜单中的 首选项 菜单中选择鼠标’。

□□□□□ 或者 □□□□□

无论固定粗体或者比例粗体，附加的斜体表明是可替换或者变量文本。斜体表示那些不直接输入的文本或者那些根据环境改变的文本。例如：

要使用 `ssh` 连接到远程机器，请在 `shell` 提示符后输入 `ssh username@domain.name`。如果远程机器是 `example.com` 且您在该其机器中的用户名为 `john`，请输入 `ssh john@example.com`。

`mount -o remount file-system` 命令会重新挂载命名的文件系统。例如：要重新挂载 `/home` 文件系统，则命令为 `mount -o remount /home`。

要查看目前安装的软件包版本，请使用 `rpm -q package` 命令。它会返回以下结果：  
**`package-version-release`**。

请注意以上文字中的粗斜体字 — `username`、`domain.name`、`file-system`、`package`、`version` 和 `release`。无论您输入文本或者运行一个命令，还是该系统显示的文本，每个字都是一个占位符。

不考虑工作中显示标题的标准用法，斜体表示第一次使用某个新且重要的用语。例如：

当 Apache HTTP 服务器接受请求时，它会分派子进程或者线程对其进行处理。这组子进程或者线程就是 `server-pool`。在 Apache HTTP 服务器 2.0 中，创建和维护服务器池的任务是由名为 `Multi-Processing Modules (MPMs)` 的模块负责的。和其它模块不同，Apache HTTP 服务器只能载入 MPM 组中的一个模块。

## 1.2. 抬升式引用约定

二，一般是多行，数据输入要明显与周围文本分开。

将发送到终端的输入设置为 Mono-spaced Roman 并显示为：

```
books      Desktop  documentation  drafts  mss    photos  stuff  svn
books_tests Desktop1  downloads      images  notes  scripts  svgs
```

源码列表也设为 Mono-spaced Roman，但以下面的形式出现和突出：

```
package org.jboss.book.jca.ex1;

import javax.naming.InitialContext;

public class ExClient
{
    public static void main(String args[])
        throws Exception
    {
        InitialContext iniCtx = new InitialContext();
        Object ref = iniCtx.lookup("EchoBean");
```

```
EchoHome    home    = (EchoHome) ref;
Echo        echo    = home.create();

System.out.println("Created Echo");

System.out.println("Echo.echo('Hello') = " + echo.echo("Hello"));
}
}
```

### 1.3. 备注及警告

最后，我们使用三种视觉形式来突出那些可能被忽视的信息。



#### 备注

备注是对手头任务的提示、捷径或者另外的解决方法。忽略提示不会造成负面后果，但您可能会错过一个更省事的诀窍。



#### 重要

重要框中的内容是那些容易错过的事情：配置更改只可用于当前会话，或者在应用更新前要重启服务。忽略重要框中的内容不会造成数据丢失但可能会让您抓狂。



#### 警告

警告是不应被忽略的。忽略警告信息很可能导致数据丢失。

## 2. 我们需要您的反馈！

如果你发现了排印错误或者有改进本文档的建议，我们希望能听取你的意见。请在 [Bugzilla http://bugzilla.redhat.com/bugzilla/](http://bugzilla.redhat.com/bugzilla/) 里提交关于产品 Fedora. 的报告。

提交报告时，请记得提及文档的标识符：*Installation\_Guide*

如果你有改进本文档的建议，请尽量将其明确化。如果你发现了错误，请指出章节号以及其周围的相关文字，以便我们尽快找到并更正该错误。



---

# 简介

This guide covers installation of Fedora, a Linux distribution built on free and open source software. This manual helps you install Fedora on desktops, laptops, and servers. The installation system is easy to use even if you lack previous knowledge of Linux or computer networks. If you select default options, Fedora provides a complete desktop operating system, including productivity applications, Internet utilities, and desktop tools.

本文档并不详细介绍安装程序的全部特性。

## 1. 背景

### 1.1. 关于 Fedora

To find out more about Fedora, refer to <http://fedoraproject.org/>. To read other documentation on Fedora related topics, refer to <http://docs.fedoraproject.org/>.

### 1.2. 取得更多的帮助

For information on additional help resources for Fedora, visit <http://fedoraproject.org/wiki/Communicate>.

## 2. 关于这份文档

### 2.1. 目标

这份文档帮助读者：

1. 如何在线上找到 Fedora 发行版
2. 建立设定来启动 Fedora
3. 理解和应用 Fedora 的安装程序
4. 完成安装后的设定



#### 其他文档资源

This guide does not cover use of Fedora. To learn how to use an installed Fedora system, refer to <http://docs.fedoraproject.org/> for other documentation.

### 2.2. 读者

This guide is intended for new and intermediate Fedora users. Advanced Fedora users with questions about detailed operation of expert installation features should consult the Anaconda development mailing list at <http://www.redhat.com/archives/anaconda-devel-list/>.





# 进阶者指南

这一章是为进阶者准备的，它包含了 Fedora 的安装过程。请注意这一章接下来会包含很多笔记和提示。如果安装过程中出现了问题，请查阅适当的章节以取得帮助。



## 只适用于进阶者

这一章是为进阶者准备的，其他的使用者可能不太明白本章的内容。初学者应该先阅读 [2](#)。

## 1.1. 概观

Fedora 的安装过程非常简单，只由几个步骤组成：

1. 下载文件并制成可启动的媒体。
2. 准备一个可安装的系统。
3. 启动电脑并执行安装程序。
4. 重新启动电脑并执行设置。

## 1.2. 下载文件

下面的方法，任选其一：



### 确认您的下载

下载失败的原因有很多。请确认您下载文件的 sha1sum。

1. 下载实时 ISO 映像文件。请使用您喜欢的程序根据 ISO 文件创建 CD 介质。您还可使用使用 *livecd-tools* 软件包将该映像写入其它可引导介质中，比如 USB 闪存盘。要将这个发行本安装到您的硬盘中，请在登录后使用桌面的快捷图标。
2. 下载完整版的 ISO 映像文件，并利用该文件建立一张光盘，或把该映像文件放在 Windows FAT32 或 Linux ext2/ext3 分区上。
3. 为最小可引导 CD 或者 USB 闪存驱动器下载 boot.iso 映像。将该映像写入适当的物理介质以创建可引导介质。该引导介质中没有任何软件包但必须指向硬盘或者在线程序库来完成安装。
4. 为缩小的引导 CD 下载 netinst.iso 映像。将该映像写入适当的物理介质以创建可引导介质。
5. 从发行本的 isolinux/ 目录中下载内核文件 vmlinuz 以及 ramdisk 映像 initrd.img。请将您的系统配置为从内核引导并载入 ramdisk 映像。有关无介质安装的详情请参考 [10](#)。  
有关设置网络引导服务器以便由此安装 Fedora 的详情请参考 [11](#)。

## 1.3. 安装前准备

备份所有您需要保留的用户数据。



### 重新定义分区大小

The installation program provides functions for resizing ext2, ext3, ext4, and NTFS formatted partitions. Refer to [7.21](#) “[Resizing Partitions](#)” for more information.

## 1.4. 安装 Fedora

使用预期介质引导，并选择合适的硬件选项和安装模式。引导选项详情请参考 [9](#)。如果您是从 Live CD 启动，请在桌面上选择“安装到硬盘”以执行安装程序。如果您是从小容量的介质或者下载的内核启动，请选择网络或者硬盘资源进行安装。

请执行安装程式的所有步骤。在您执行最后确认之前，安装程式不会改变您的系统。当安装过程完成后，重新启动您的电脑。

## 1.5. 安装后设置

当系统完成动后，它会要求您作一些基本设置，您可以根据您的硬件作一些适合的设置，然后继续登入的步骤。

# 初学者

This chapter explains how to get the files you need to install and run Fedora on your computer. Concepts in this chapter may be new, especially if this is your first free and open source operating system. If you have any trouble with this chapter, find help by visiting the Fedora Forums at <http://www.fedoraforum.org/>.



## 下载链接

To follow a Web-based guide to downloading, visit <http://get.fedoraproject.org/>. For guidance on which architecture to download, refer to 2.2 “[Fedora 11](#)”.

## 2.1. 如何下载 Fedora?

The Fedora Project distributes Fedora in many ways, mostly free of cost and downloaded over the Internet. The most common distribution method is CD and DVD media. There are several types of CD and DVD media available, including:

- A full set of the software on DVD media

- Live images you can use to try Fedora, and then install to your system if you so choose

- 用于通过互联网链接进行安装的小容量启动光盘或闪存盘

- 一张 DVD 光盘，包含 Fedora 源代码

Most users want the Fedora Live image or the full set of installable software on DVD or CDs. The reduced bootable images are suitable for use with a fast Internet connection and install Fedora on one computer. Source code discs are not used for installing Fedora, but are resources for experienced users and software developers.



## 下载媒体

有网络连接的使用者可以下载 CD 和 DVD 或闪存盘的 ISO 映像文件。ISO 映像文件是 CD 或 DVD 的直接复制文件，您可以把它直接存入 CD 或 DVD 光盘中，而闪存盘映像文件也是闪存盘的直接复制文件，您可以把它直接存入闪存盘中。

若要查看如何烧录 CD 或 DVD 光盘，请参考 2.4 “[Fedora 11](#)”。

从网络下载 Fedora 软件是完全免费的。

### 2.1.1. 从映像点站

To find the freely downloadable distributions of Fedora, look for a *mirror*. A mirror is a computer server open to the public for free downloads of software, including Fedora. Mirrors offer both free open source software and closed source software. To locate a mirror, visit <http://mirrors.fedoraproject.org/publiclist> using a Web browser, and choose a server from the list. The web page lists mirrors by geographic location. Mirrors geographically closer to you are ideal for faster downloading speeds.

Mirrors publish Fedora software under a well-organized hierarchy of folders. For example, the Fedora 11 distribution normally appears in the directory `fedora/linux/releases/11/`. This directory contains a folder for each architecture supported by that release of Fedora. CD and DVD media files appear inside that folder, in

a folder called `iso/`. For example, you can find the file for the DVD distribution of Fedora 11 for `x86_64` at `fedora/linux/releases/11/Fedora/x86_64/iso/Fedora-11-x86_64-DVD.iso`.

### 2.1.2. 从 BitTorrent

BitTorrent is a way to download information in cooperation with other computers. Each computer cooperating in the group downloads pieces of the information in a particular torrent from other peers in the group. Computers that have finished downloading all the data in a torrent remain in the swarm to *seed*, or provide data to other peers. If you download using BitTorrent, as a courtesy you should seed the torrent at least until you have uploaded the same amount of data you downloaded.

If your computer does not have software installed for BitTorrent, visit the BitTorrent home page at <http://www.bittorrent.com/download/> to download it. BitTorrent client software is available for Windows, Mac OS, Linux, and many other operating systems.

You do not need to find a special mirror for BitTorrent files. The BitTorrent protocol ensures that your computer participates in a nearby group. To download and use the Fedora BitTorrent files, visit <http://torrent.fedoraproject.org/>.



#### 小容量开机映像

目前不能通过 BitTorrent 下载小容量的 CD 和闪存盘映像。

## 2.2. 我的电脑属于哪一种架构？

Releases are separated by *architecture*, or type of computer processor. Use the following table to determine the architecture of your computer according to the type of processor. Consult your manufacturer's documentation for details on your processor, if necessary.

Processor manufacturer and model	Architecture type for Fedora
Intel (except Atom 230, Atom 330, Core 2 Duo, Centrino Core2 Duo, and recent vintage Xeon); AMD (except Athlon 64, Athlon x2, Sempron 64, and Opteron); VIA C3, C7	i386
Intel Atom 230, Atom 330, Core 2 Duo, Centrino Core 2 Duo, and Xeon; AMD Athlon 64, Athlon x2, Sempron64, and Opteron; Apple MacBook, MacBook Pro, and MacBook Air	x86_64
Apple Macintosh G3, G4, G5, PowerBook, and other non-Intel models	ppc


表 2.1. Processor and architecture types



#### i386 架构能运行在大部分 Windows 相容的电脑上

If you are unsure what type of processor your computer uses, choose i386.

The exception is if your computer is a non-Intel based Apple Macintosh. Refer to [2.1 "Processor and architecture types"](#) for more information.



**Intel Atom Processor Architectures Vary**  
 The N and Z Series Atom processors are based on the i386 architecture. The 230 and 330 Series Atom processors are based on the x86\_64 architecture. Refer to <http://ark.intel.com/cpugroup.aspx?familyID=29035> for more details.

## 2.3. 我需要下载哪个文件？

You have several options to download Fedora. Read the options below to decide the best one for you.

Each file available for download in a Fedora distribution includes the architecture type in the file name. For example, the file for the DVD distribution of Fedora 11 for x86\_64 is named Fedora-11-x86\_64-DVD.iso. Refer to [2.2](#) “[我该如何安装 Fedora？](#)” if you are unsure of your computer's architecture.

### 1. DVD 上的完整套件


If you have plenty of time, a fast Internet connection, and wish a broader choice of software on the install media, download the full DVD version. Once burned to DVD, the media is bootable and includes an installation program. The DVD version contains a mode to perform rescue operations on your Fedora system in an emergency. You can download the DVD version directly from a mirror, or via BitTorrent.

### 2. 实时映像

If you want to try Fedora before you install it on your computer, download the Live image version. If your computer supports booting from CD or USB, you can boot the operating system without making any changes to your hard disk. The Live image also provides an Install to Hard Disk desktop shortcut. If you decide you like what you see, and want to install it, simply activate the selection to copy Fedora to your hard disk. You can download the Live image directly from a mirror, or using BitTorrent.

### 3. 小容量启动媒体

如果您有高速网络连接而又不想下载整个发行本，您可以下载小容量的引导映像。Fedora 在光盘中提供了最小引导环境。当您使用最小引导介质启动您的系统后，[您可以安装 Fedora](#)，就可通过互联网直接安装 Fedora。虽然这个方法仍需要从互联网中下载一定数量的数据，但总要比完整发行本介质的文小要少得多。完成安装后，您可以根据需要在您的系统中添加或者删除软件。



**下载的容量**  
 Installing the default software for Fedora over the Internet requires more time than the Live image, but less time than the entire DVD distribution. Actual results depend on the software you select and network traffic conditions.

The following table explains where to find the desired files on a mirror site. Replace *arch* with the architecture of the computer being installed.

Media type	File locations
DVD 上的完整套件	fedora/linux/releases/11/Fedora/ <b>arch</b> /iso/Fedora-11- <b>arch</b> -DVD.iso
实时映像	fedora/linux/releases/11/Live/ <b>arch</b> /iso/Fedora-11- <b>arch</b> -Live.iso, fedora/linux/releases/11/Live/ <b>arch</b> /iso/Fedora-11-KDE- <b>arch</b> -Live.iso
小容量启动光盘	fedora/linux/releases/11/Fedora/ <b>arch</b> /os/images/boot.iso

表 2.2. Locating files

## 2.4. 如何制作 Fedora 媒体

A Fedora ISO file can be turned into either CD or DVD discs. You can turn Fedora Live ISO files into bootable USB media, as well as a CD or DVD.

### 2.4.1. 制作 CD 和 DVD 光盘

To learn how to turn ISO images into CD or DVD media, refer to <http://docs.fedoraproject.org/readme-burning-isos/>.

### 2.4.2. 制作 USB 介质

To make bootable USB media, use a Fedora Live image. Use either a Windows or Linux system to make the bootable USB media.



**USB 映像写入是无害的**

Writing the Live image to the USB media is *nondestructive*. Any existing data on the media is not harmed.

*It is always a good idea to back up important data before performing sensitive disk operations.*


To begin, make sure there is sufficient free space available on the USB media. There is no need to repartition or reformat your media. *It is always a good idea to back up important data before performing sensitive disk operations.*

#### 2.4.2.1. USB Image Creation from Windows

1. Download a Live ISO file as explained in [2.3 “ ”](#).
2. Download the Windows liveusb-creator program at <http://fedorahosted.org/liveusb-creator>.
3. 按照网页以及 liveusb-creator 程序给出的步骤生成可引导 USB 介质。

#### 2.4.2.2. USB Image Creation in Linux

USB 介质通常是闪存设备，有时也称为 *U* ；或者外部连接的硬盘设备。几乎所有这种类型的介质都是以 vfat 文件系统进行格式化的。您可以创建 ext2、ext3 或者 vfat 格式的可引导 USB 介质。



**ext4 and Btrfs**

The GRUB bootloader does not support the ext4 or Btrfs file systems. You cannot create bootable USB media on media formatted as ext4 or Btrfs.



**非常规 USB 介质**

在很少情况下，比如特殊格式化或者分区的 USB 介质，映像写入会失败。

1. 如 [2.3 “ ”](#) 所述下载实时 ISO 文件。

2. 在您的系统中安装 `livecd-tools` 软件包。对于 Fedora 系统，请使用以下命令：

```
su -c 'yum -y install livecd-tools'
```

3. 插入您的 USB 介质。
4. 找到您的 USB 介质的设备名称。如果该介质有一个卷名，您可在 `/dev/disk/by-label` 中，或者使用 `findfs` 查找该名称：

```
su -c 'findfs LABEL="MyLabel"'
```

如果该介质没有卷名，或者您不知道，请查看 `/var/log/messages` 日志：

```
su -c 'less /var/log/messages'
```

5. 请使用 `livecd-iso-to-disk` 命令将 ISO 映像写入该介质：

```
su -c 'livecd-iso-to-disk the_image.iso /dev/sdX1'
```

请使用 USB 介质中分区的设备名称替换 `sdX1`。大都是闪存驱动器和外置硬盘只使用一个分区。如果您改变了这个行为或者使用奇怪分区的介质，您需要咨询有关人士以获得帮助。

## 2.5. 为什么我不能下载 Fedora?

If you do not have a fast Internet connection, or if you have a problem creating boot media, downloading may not be an option. Fedora DVD and CD distribution media is available from a number of online sources around the world at a minimal cost. Use your favorite Web search engine to locate a vendor, or refer to <http://fedoraproject.org/wiki/Distribution>.

## 2.6. 我如何才能启动安装程序?

要从最小引导介质、实时映像或者发行本 DVD 中启动安装程序，请遵照以下步骤：

1. 关闭您的计算机系统。
2. 断开所有安装不必要的外部 Firewire 或者 USB 盘。有关详情请参考 [7.18.1.3 “FireWire and USB Disks”](#)。
3. 在您的计算机中插入介质并打开计算机。

You may need to press a specific key or combination of keys to boot from the media, or configure your system's *Basic Input/Output System*, or BIOS, to boot from the media. On most computers you must select the boot or BIOS option promptly after turning on the computer. Most Windows-compatible computer systems use a special key such as F1, F2, F12, or Del to start the BIOS configuration menu. On Apple computers, the C key boots the system from the DVD drive. On older Apple hardware you may need to press `Cmd +Opt+Shift+Del` to boot from DVD drive.



### 配置 BIOS

如果您不确定您的计算机支持哪些功能，不知道如何配置 BIOS，可以查看厂商提供的文档。详细的设置过程以及硬件规范和配置超出了本文档的范围。



---

# 部分 I. Before you begin

This part of the *Fedora Installation Guide* covers decisions that you should make and resources that you should gather before installing Fedora, including:

the decision whether to upgrade an existing installation of Fedora or install a new copy.

hardware considerations, and hardware details that you may need during installation.

preparing to install Fedora over a network.

preparing driver media.

---

---

---

## 安装前的准备工作

### 3.1. 选择升级还是安装？

到底是升级还是安装，请参考 [18](#) 。

### 3.2. 您的硬件兼容吗？

Hardware compatibility is particularly important if you have an older system or a system that you built yourself. Fedora 11 should be compatible with most hardware in systems that were factory built within the last two years. However, hardware specifications change almost daily, so it is difficult to guarantee that your hardware is 100% compatible.

The most recent list of supported hardware can be found in the Release Notes for Fedora 11, available at <http://docs.fedoraproject.org/release-notes> .

### 3.3. 你有足够的磁盘空间吗？

Nearly every modern-day operating system (OS) uses *disk partitions*, and Fedora is no exception. When you install Fedora, you may have to work with disk partitions. If you have not worked with disk partitions before (or need a quick review of the basic concepts), refer to [A](#), before proceeding.

The disk space used by Fedora must be separate from the disk space used by other OSes you may have installed on your system, such as Windows, OS/2, or even a different version of Linux. For x86, AMD64, and Intel® 64 systems, at least two partitions (/ and swap) must be dedicated to Fedora.

在开始安装进程之前，你必须：

- have enough *unpartitioned*<sup>1</sup> disk space for the installation of Fedora, or

- have one or more partitions that may be deleted, thereby freeing up enough disk space to install Fedora.

要更清楚地了解您真正需要多少空间，请参阅 [7.21.4](#) “ ” 中所讨论的推荐分区大小。

If you are not sure that you meet these conditions, or if you want to know how to create free disk space for your Fedora installation, refer to [A](#), .

### 3.4. 您可以使用光盘安装吗？

There are several methods that can be used to install Fedora.

Installing from a CD-ROM or DVD requires that you have a Fedora 11 CD-ROM or DVD, and you have a DVD/CD-ROM drive on a system that supports booting from it.

你的 BIOS 可能需要修改为从 DVD/CD-ROM 驱动器启动。关于修改 BIOS 的更多信息，请参阅 [7.3.1](#) “*Booting the Installation Program on x86, AMD64, and Intel 64 Systems*”。

### 3.4.1. 其它引导方法

#### 引导 DVD/CD-ROM

如果您可以使用光盘驱动器启动，您可能需要创建您自己的光盘来启动安装程序。如果您需要通过网络或从一个硬盘上进行安装，创建您自己的光盘就将非常有用。请参阅 [3.4.2](#) “ ” 来获得更详细的说明。

#### USB pen 驱动器

如果你无法从光盘驱动器引导，但是可以使用 USB 设备（如 USB pen 驱动器）引导，你可以使用以下的引导方法：

要使用 USB pen 驱动器，使用 `dd` 命令复制 CD-ROM #1 中的 `/images/` 目录中的 `diskboot.img` 映像文件。如：

```
dd if=diskboot.img of=/dev/sda
```

你的 BIOS 必须支持从 USB 设备引导才能使这个引导方法奏效。

### 3.4.2. 制作安装引导光盘

The `images/` directory on the installation DVD contains the `boot.iso` file. This file is an image of a disc that you can burn to a CD and use to boot the installation program. To use this boot CD, your computer must be able to boot from its CD-ROM drive, and its BIOS settings must be configured to do so.



#### Choose an option to burn a CD from an image

When you burn the `boot.iso` image, make sure that you select the option to burn an image file to disc in your CD burning software. The exact wording of this option varies, depending on the software that you use, but should contain the word "image". Note that not all CD burning software includes this option. In particular, the CD burning software built into Microsoft Windows XP and Windows Vista does not offer this capability. There are many programs available that add this capability to Windows operating systems; Infrarecorder is a free and open-source example available from <http://www.infrarecorder.org/>.

## 3.5. 筹备网络安装



#### Note

如果你执行的是基于网络的安装，请确定安装光盘（或其它类型的光盘）不在系统的光盘驱动器内。否则可能会导致预计不到的错误。

The Fedora installation media must be available for either a network installation (via NFS, FTP, or HTTP) or installation via local storage. Use the following steps if you are performing an NFS, FTP, or HTTP installation.

通过网络安装所要使用的 NFS、FTP、HTTP 服务器必须是一台能够提供安装光盘上的完整内容的单独机器。

 Note

The Fedora installation program has the ability to test the integrity of the installation media. It works with the CD / DVD, hard drive ISO, and NFS ISO installation methods. We recommend that you test all installation media before starting the installation process, and before reporting any installation-related bugs (many of the bugs reported are actually due to improperly-burned CDs). To use this test, type the following command at the boot: prompt:

```
linux mediacheck
```

 Note

In the following examples, the directory on the installation staging server that will contain the installation files will be specified as */location/of/disk/space*. The directory that will be made publicly available via FTP, NFS, or HTTP will be specified as */publicly/available/directory*. For example, */location/of/disk/space* may be a directory you create called */var/isos*. */publicly/available/directory* might be */var/www/html/f11*, for an HTTP install.

要从安装光盘中把文件复制到充当安装服务器的机器上，执行以下步骤：

Create an iso image from the installation disk(s) using the following command (for DVDs):

```
dd if=/dev/dvd of=/location/of/disk/space/f11.iso
```

这里的 *dvd* 指的是 DVD 驱动设备：

For instructions on how to prepare a network installation using CD-ROMs, refer to the instructions on the README-en file in disk1.

### 3.5.1. 筹备 FTP 和 HTTP 安装

Extract the files from the iso image of the installation DVD or the iso images of the installation CDs and place them in a directory that is shared over FTP or HTTP.

Next, make sure that the directory is shared via FTP or HTTP, and verify client access. You can check to see whether the directory is accessible from the server itself, and then from another machine on the same subnet that you will be installing to.

### 3.5.2. 筹备 NFS 安装

对于 NFS 安装来说，没有必要挂载 iso 映像。使 iso 映像通过 NFS 可用就足够了。你可以把 iso 映像移到 NFS 的输出目录来使它可用。

For DVD:

```
mv /location/of/disk/space/f11.iso /publicly/available/directory/
```

For CDROMs:

```
mv /location/of/disk/space/f11-disk*.iso /publicly/available/directory/
```

Ensure that the `/publicly/available/directory` directory is exported via NFS via an entry in `/etc/exports`.

要输出到指定的系统:

```
/publicly/available/directory client.ip.address(ro,no_root_squash)
```

要输出到所有系统里, 使用如下的设置:

```
/publicly/available/directory *(ro,no_root_squash)
```

Start the NFS daemon (on a Fedora system, use `/sbin/service nfs start`). If NFS is already running, reload the configuration file (on a Fedora system use `/sbin/service nfs reload`).

### 3.6. 筹备硬盘驱动器安装

Hard drive installations require the use of the ISO (or DVD/CD-ROM) images. An ISO image is a file containing an exact copy of a DVD/CD-ROM image. After placing the required ISO images (the binary Fedora DVD/CD-ROMs) in a directory, choose to install from the hard drive. You can then point the installation program at that directory to perform the installation.

要筹备系统进行硬盘驱动器安装, 你必须使用以下方法之一来设置系统:

使用一组光盘集合 — 从每个安装光盘 (或 DVD) 中创建光盘 ISO 映像文件。对于每个光盘, 在 Linux 系统上执行以下命令 (对于 DVD 只执行一次):

```
dd if=/dev/cdrom of=/tmp/file-name.iso
```

使用 ISO 映像 — 把这些映像传输到要安装的系统上。

在试图安装前, 请校验 ISO 映像的完整性。这会帮助你避免硬盘安装过程中经常会遇到的问题。要在执行安装前校验 ISO 映像的完整性, 请使用 `md5sum` 程序 (该程序有适用于各类操作系统的版本)。`md5sum` 程序应该可以在提供 ISO 映像的同一服务器上找到。

#### Note

The Fedora installation program has the ability to test the integrity of the installation media. It works with the CD / DVD, hard drive ISO, and NFS ISO installation methods. We recommend that you test all installation media before starting the installation process, and before reporting any installation-related bugs (many of the bugs reported are actually due to improperly-burned CDs). To use this test, type the following command at the boot: prompt:

```
linux mediacheck
```

Additionally, if a file called `updates.img` exists in the location from which you install, it is used for updates to `anaconda`, the installation program. Refer to the file `install-methods.txt` in the `anaconda` RPM package for detailed information on the various ways to install Fedora, as well as how to apply the installation program updates.

## System Specifications List

The installation program automatically detects and installs your computer's hardware. Although you should make sure that your hardware meets the minimum requirements to install Fedora (refer to [3.2](#) “”) you do not usually need to supply the installation program with any specific details about your system.

However, when performing certain types of installation, some specific details might be useful or even essential.

If you plan to use a customized partition layout, record:

The model numbers, sizes, types, and interfaces of the hard drives attached to the system. For example, Seagate ST3320613AS 320 GB on SATA0, Western Digital WD7500AAKS 750 GB on SATA1. This will allow you to identify specific hard drives during the partitioning process.

If you are installing Fedora as an additional operating system on an existing system, record:

The mount points of the existing partitions on the system. For example, /boot on sda1, / on sda2, and /home on sdb1. This will allow you to identify specific partitions during the partitioning process.

If you plan to install from an image on a local hard drive:

The hard drive and directory that holds the image - see [7.2](#) “ [ISO](#) ” for examples.

If you plan to install from a network location, or install on an iSCSI target:

The make and model numbers of the network adapters on your system. For example, Netgear GA311. This will allow you to identify adapters when manually configuring the network.

IP、DHCP 和 BOOTP 地址

Netmask

Gateway IP address

One or more name server IP addresses (DNS)

如果你不熟悉以上的联网需求或术语，请联系你的网络管理员。

If you plan to install from a network location:

The location of the image on an FTP server, HTTP (web) server, or NFS server - see [7.9](#) “[Installing via FTP or HTTP](#)” and [7.8](#) “ [NFS](#) ” for examples.

If you plan to install on an iSCSI target:

The location of the iSCSI target. Depending on your network, you might also need a CHAP username and password, and perhaps a reverse CHAP username and password - see [7.19](#) “[Advanced Storage Options](#)”.

If your computer is part of a domain:

You should verify that the domain name will be supplied by the DHCP server. If not, you will need to input the domain name manually during installation.





## 用于 Intel 或 AMD 系统的驱动介质

### 5.1. 为什么需要驱动程序盘

While the Fedora installation program is loading, a screen may appear asking you for driver media. The driver media screen is most often seen in the following scenarios:

There is no driver available for a piece of hardware that is necessary for installation to proceed.

If you run the installation program by entering `linux dd` at the installation boot prompt.

### 5.2. 驱动程序介质到底是什么？

驱动程序介质能够为安装程序可能支持也可能不支持的硬件添加支持。它可以是由红帽制作的驱动软盘或者映像文件，也可以根据在互联网上发现的驱动程序自制，还可以是硬件制造商配给硬件的软盘或光盘。

Driver media is used if you need access to a particular device to install Fedora. Drivers can be used for non-standard, very new, or uncommon devices.



#### Note

If an unsupported device is not needed to install Fedora on your system, continue with the installation and add support for the new piece of hardware once the installation is complete.

### 5.3. 如何获取驱动程序介质

Driver images may be available from a hardware or software vendor's website. If you suspect that your system may require one of these drivers, you should create a driver diskette or CD-ROM before beginning your Fedora installation.



#### Note

你还可能通过一个网络文件来使用驱动程序映像。你可以使用 `linux dd=url` 命令来替代 `linux dd` 引导命令，其中的 *url* 是驱动程序映像所在的 HTTP、FTP、或 NFS 地址。

#### 5.3.1. 根据映像文件创建驱动程序盘

To create a driver diskette from a driver diskette image using Linux:

1. Insert a blank, formatted diskette into the first diskette drive.
2. 在含有驱动程序盘映像（如：***drvnet.img***）的同一目录下，以根用户身份键入 `dd if=drvnet.img of=/dev/fd0` 。



### Note

The installation program supports using an external flash drive as a way to add driver images during the installation process. The best way to do this is to mount the flash drive and copy the desired driverdisk.img onto the flash drive. For example:

```
dd if=driverdisk.img of=/dev/sda
```

然后，你会在安装的过程中被提示选择要使用的分区和文件。

## 5.4. 在安装过程中使用驱动程序映像

如果你需要使用驱动程序映像，例如在 PCMCIA 设备或 NFS 安装过程中，安装程序会在需要时提示你插入驱动程序（磁盘、光盘或文件名称）。

For example, to specifically load a driver diskette that you have created, begin the installation process by booting from the Fedora DVD (or using boot media you have created). For x86-based systems, at the boot: prompt, enter linux dd if using an x86 or x86-64 system. Refer to [7.3.1 “Booting the Installation Program on x86, AMD64, and Intel 64 Systems”](#) for details on booting the installation program.

The installation program asks you to insert the driver diskette. Once the driver diskette is read by the installation program, it can apply those drivers to hardware discovered on your system later in the installation process.

---

## 部分 II. The installation process

This part of the *Fedora Installation Guide* details the installation process itself, from various methods of booting the installer up to the point where the computer must restart to finalize the installation. This part of the manual also includes a chapter on troubleshooting problems with the installation process.

---

---

---

# 开始安装

## 取消安装

To abort the installation, either press `Ctrl +Alt+Del` or power off your computer with the power switch. You may abort the installation process without consequence at any time prior to selecting Write changes to disk on the Write partitioning to disk screen. Fedora makes no permanent changes to your computer until that point. Please be aware that stopping the installation after partitioning has begun can leave your computer unusable.

## 6.1. 启动选单

启动媒体会显示一个图形的启动选单。如果您在 60 秒内没有按下任何键，那么预设的选项将会执行，也可以直接按下 `Enter` 来执行预设的选项。如果要使用不同的选项，请使用键盘上的方向键来操作，当完成后按下 `Enter` 键。如果您想自订启动选项，请按下 `Tab` 键。

## 启动选项

取得一份启动选项的列表，请访问 [9](#)。

When using Fedora Live media, press any key during the initial boot countdown to bring up the Boot Options menu. The boot options include:

### 启动

这是预设的选项。如果您选择这个选项，就只有核心和用于启动的程序会载入记忆体，所以启动的时间会较少。但启动其他程序会使用较多的时间来载入。这个选项可用于记忆体容量小的电脑。

### 校验并启动

这个选项在您启动光盘之前先验证光盘的完整性。请参考 [6.3](#) “[验证光盘完整性](#)” 以获得更多资料。

### 内存测试

这个选项将在你系统上运行彻底的内存测试。要获得更多信息，参考 [9.6.1](#) “[内存测试 \(RAM\)](#)”。

### 从本地驱动盘启动

该选项从第一个已安装磁盘上启动系统。如果你偶然启动了本光盘，使用该选项可立即从硬盘启动而不启动安装程序。

如果您是从 DVD，救援光盘或小容量的启动媒体启动，会包含以下的选项：

### 安装或升级已有的系统

该选项为默认。选择该选项将使用图形安装程序安装 Fedora 到你的计算机系统。

### 以基本显卡驱动安装系统

This option allows you to install Fedora in graphical mode even if the installation program is unable to load the correct driver for your video card. If your screen appears distorted or goes blank when using the the Install or upgrade an existing system option, restart your computer and try this option instead.

### 救援已安装系统

选择这个选项将用你已安装的(但无法正常启动的) `linux rescue` `Fedora` 系统修复某个问题。尽管 `Fedora` 是一个具有优越稳定性的计算平台，仍然有可能偶尔的发生无法启动的情况。这个救援环境包含允许你修复大部分此类问题的工具程序。

### 从本地驱动盘启动

(as for Live CD)

### 内存测试

(as for Live CD)

## 6.2. 从另一个不同的源安装

All boot media except the distribution DVD present a menu that allows you to choose the installation source, such as the network or a hard disk. If you are booting the distribution DVD and do not want to install from the DVD, hit Tab at the boot menu. Add a space and the option `linux askmethod` to the end of the line that appears below the menu.

你可以通过存放在硬盘上的 ISO 映像文件，或使用 NFS，FTP，或 HTTP 模式的某个网络来安装 `Fedora`。有经验的用户经常使用以上方法中的一种，因为从硬盘或网络服务器中读取数据要比从光盘或 DVD 盘中快。

下列表格会简要介绍不同的引导模式及每一个推荐的安装方式：

Boot method	安装方法
DVD	DVD，网络，或硬盘
最小的启动光盘或 U 盘，救援光盘	网络或硬盘
Live CD 或 U 盘	安装到硬盘程序

表 6.1. Boot methods and installation methods

7.4 “ ” contains detailed information about installing from alternate locations.

## 6.3. 正在检查介质

分发的 DVD 介质和 Live 光盘介质提供一个选项以检查介质的完整性。当在家用电脑设备创建光盘或 DVD 介质时有时会发生刻录错误。安装程序选定的软件包数据中的某个错误可能将导致安装失败。要最小化数据错误而影响安装的机率，请在安装前检查介质。

### 6.3.1. 正在检查 Live CD

如果你从 Live 光盘启动，从启动菜单选择 校验并启动。校验过程在启动过程中自动运行，如果校验成功，Live 光盘将继续加载。如果校验失败，用你先前下载的 ISO 映像创建一个新的 Live 光盘。

### 6.3.2. 正在检查 DVD

如果你从 `Fedora` 分发的 DVD 引导，在你选择安装 `Fedora` 之后会出现检验介质的选项。如果校验成功，安装过程将正常进行。如果失败，请用你之前下载的 ISO 映像创建一张新的 DVD。

## 6.4. 使用 PXE 从网络启动

To boot with

PXE, you need a properly configured server, and a network interface in your computer that supports PXE. For information on how to configure a PXE server, refer to [11](#).

配置计算机为从网络接口启动。这个选项在 BIOS 中，可能被标记为 Network Boot 或 Boot Services。一旦您正确地配置了 PXE 启动，电脑将不需要其他介质启动 Fedora 安装系统。

要通过 PXE 服务器启动计算机：

1. 确认网络电缆已插好。网卡的连接指示灯会亮起，即使计算机没有打开电源。
2. 打开计算机电源。
3. 接下来会出现一个菜单屏幕。按下相应于所需要的选项的数字键。

### PXE 出错处理

如果您的计算机没有从网络服务器启动，检查 BIOS 是否配置为从正确的网络接口启动。一些 BIOS 将网络接口标记为可能的启动设备，但是并不支持 PXE 标准。查看您的硬件手册来获取更多信息。

### 多重NICs和PXE安装

Some servers with multiple network interfaces may not assign eth0 to the first network interface as BIOS knows it, which can cause the installer to try using a different network interface than was used by PXE. To change this behavior, use the following in `pxelinux.cfg/*` config files:

```
IPAPPEND 2
```

```
APPEND ksdevice=bootif
```

The configuration options above causes the installer to use the same network interface as BIOS and PXE use. You can also use the following option:

```
ksdevice=link
```

This option causes the installer to use the first network device it finds that is linked to a network switch.

## 6.5. 图形和文本界面

Fedora 11 supports graphical and text-based installations. However, the installer image must either fit in RAM or appear on local storage, such as the installation DVD or Live Media. Therefore, only systems with more than 192 MB of RAM or that boot from the installation DVD or Live Media can use the graphical installer. Systems with 192 MB RAM or less automatically scale back to using the text-based installer. Note that you must still have a minimum of 64 MB of RAM for installation to proceed in text mode. If you prefer to use the text-based installer, type `linux text` at the `boot:` prompt.

如果发生下列状况之一，安装程序将使用文本模式：

安装无法识别您系统中的显示硬件。

你电脑的内存少于 192 MB。

从启动菜单中选择文本模式安装

The text screens provide most of the same functions as the standard screens, although disk partitioning is simplified, and bootloader configuration and package selection are handled automatically in text mode. If you choose to install Fedora in text mode, you can still configure your system to use a graphical interface after installation.



### 使用图形界面

Installing in text mode does not prevent you from using a graphical interface on your system once it is installed. If you have trouble configuring your system for graphical interface use, consult other sources for troubleshooting help as shown in [1.2 “ ”](#).



### 安装过程至少需要64MB内存

如果您的计算机不足64MB内存，安装将停止。



# Installing on Intel and AMD Systems

This chapter explains how to perform a Fedora installation from the DVD/CD-ROM, using the graphical, mouse-based installation program. The following topics are discussed:

- 逐渐熟悉安装程序的用户界面
- 启动安装程序
- 选择安装方法
- 安装中的配置步骤（语言、键盘、鼠标、分区等等）
- 结束安装

## 7.1. The Graphical Installation Program User Interface

如果你从前使用过 *graphical user interface GUI*，你对这一进程会比较熟悉；你只需使用鼠标在屏幕间翻阅，“点击”按钮，或者输入文本字段。

你还可以使用键盘在安装中浏览各屏幕。Tab键允许你在屏幕中移动；上下箭头键允许你在列表中移动；+和-符号键允许你扩展或紧缩列表；Space和Enter键选择或取消选择被突出显示的项目。你还可以使用Alt+**X** 键组合来点击按钮或选择其它屏幕，这里的 **X** 代表屏幕中带下划线的字母。



### Note

If you are using an x86, AMD64, or Intel® 64 system, and you do not wish to use the GUI installation program, the text mode installation program is also available. To start the text mode installation program, press the Esc key while the Fedora boot menu is displayed, then use the following command at the boot: prompt:

```
linux text
```

Refer to [6.1 “Boot menu”](#) for a description of the Fedora boot menu and to [7.2 “Text mode installation”](#) for a brief overview of text mode installation instructions.

It is highly recommended that installs be performed using the GUI installation program. The GUI installation program offers the full functionality of the Fedora installation program, including LVM configuration which is not available during a text mode installation.

必须使用文本模式安装程序的用户可以遵循图形化安装说明来获得所需信息。

### 7.1.1. A Note about Virtual Consoles

The Fedora installation program offers more than the dialog boxes of the installation process. Several kinds of diagnostic messages are available to you, as well as a way to enter commands from a shell prompt. The installation program displays these messages on five *virtual consoles*, among which you can switch using a single keystroke combination.

虚拟控制台是非图形化环境中的 shell 提示，从物理机器中而不是远程地进入。你可以同时进入多个虚拟控制台。

These virtual consoles can be helpful if you encounter a problem while installing Fedora. Messages displayed on the installation or system consoles can help pinpoint a problem. Refer to [7.1 “Virtual Consoles”](#) for a listing of the virtual consoles, keystrokes used to switch to them, and their contents.

一般来说，除非你试图诊断安装问题，你没有理由离开默认的控制台（图形化安装是第六号虚拟控制台）。

终端	击键	内容
1	ctrl+alt+f1	installation dialog
2	ctrl+alt+f2	shell提示符
3	ctrl+alt+f3	安装日志(安装程序的信息)
4	ctrl+alt+f4	系统相关信息
5	ctrl+alt+f5	其它信息
6	ctrl+alt+f6	图形化显示

表 7.1. 控制台，击键，和内容

## 7.2. 文本模式安装程序用户界面




**注意**

Graphical installation remains the recommended method for installing Fedora. If you are installing Fedora on a system that lacks a graphical display, consider performing the installation over a VNC connection - see [12 \*Installing Through VNC\*](#).

如果您的系统有图形化显示，但是图形化安装失败，请尝试用xdriver=vesa选项启动 -；参考 [9](#)

The Fedora text mode installation program uses a screen-based interface that includes most of the on-screen *widgets* commonly found on graphical user interfaces. [7.1 “Virtual Consoles”](#), and [7.2 “Installation Program Widgets as seen in the partitioning screen”](#), illustrate the screens that appear during the installation process.

The cursor is used to select (and interact with) a particular widget. As the cursor is moved from widget to widget, it may cause the widget to change color, or the cursor itself may only appear positioned in or next to the widget.



**Note**

While text mode installations are not explicitly documented, those using the text mode installation program can easily follow the GUI installation instructions. However, because text mode presents you with a simpler, more streamlined insatallation process, certain options that are available in graphical mode are not also available in text mode. These differences are noted in the description of the installation process in this guide, and include:

- customizing the partition layout.
- customizing the bootloader configuration.
- selecting packages during installation.

Note also that manipulation of LVM (Logical Volume Management) disk volumes is only possible in graphical mode. In text mode it is only possible to view and accept the default LVM setup.

### Note

Not every language supported in graphical installation mode is also supported in text mode. Specifically, languages written with a character set other than the Latin or Cyrillic alphabets are not available in text mode. If you choose a language written with a character set that is not supported in text mode, the installation program will present you with the English versions of the screens.



图 7.1. 在「引导装载程序配置」中所见的安装程序控件

### Legend

1. 窗口 — 在整个安装进程中，你会不时地在屏幕上看到窗口（本书中通常把它称为 *dialog*）。有时，一个窗口会重叠在另一个窗口之上；在这种情况下，你只能与最上面的窗口交流。当该窗口使用完毕，它就会消失，允许你继续使用下面的窗口。
2. 复选箱 — 复选箱允许你选择或取消选择某项功能。箱内要么显示一个星号（已选），要么是一个空格（未选）。当光标位于复选箱内，按 `Space` 键来选择或取消一个功能。
3. 文本输入行 — 文本输入行是你输入安装程序所要求信息的区域。当光标停在文本输入行时，你可以在那一行中输入并（或）编辑信息。

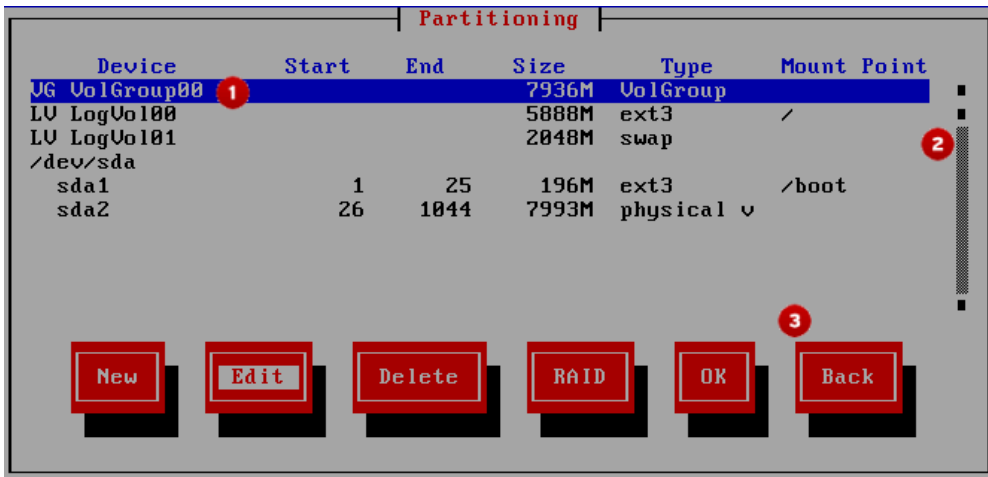


图 7.2. Installation Program Widgets as seen in the partitioning screen

### Legend

1. 文本构件 — 文本构件是屏幕上用于显示文本的区域。有时，文本构件可能还会含有其它构件，如复选箱。如果文本构件所含的信息超出为它保留的空间所能显示的，一个滚动条就会出现；如果你将光标定位于文本构件之内，你可以使用向上和向下箭头键来在所有信息中上下滚动。你在滚动条上的当前位置被显示为一个 # 字符，它会在你拖拉滚动条时移上移下。
2. 滚动条 — 滚动条出现在窗口的侧面或底部，它用来控制窗框内显示的文档或列表部分。滚动条使你能够轻而易举地查看文件的任意部分。
3. 按钮构件 — 按钮构件是与安装程序交流的主要方法。通过 Tab 键和 Enter 键使用这些按钮，你可以在安装程序的屏幕中逐步推进。当按钮被突出显示时，它们可以被选择。

### 7.2.1. 使用键盘来导航

在安装对话框之间的切换是通过一组简单的击键来达到的。要移动光标，使用向左、向右、向上、和向下箭头键。使用 Tab 和 Shift-Tab 键来在屏幕上的每个构件间向前或向后循环。多数屏幕在底部显示了一个可用光标定位键的摘要。

要“按”一个按钮，将光标定位在按钮之上（例如，使用 Tab 键），然后按 Space 或 Enter 键。要从一列项目中选择一项，将光标移至你要选择的项目，然后按 Enter 键。要选择一个带复选箱的项目，将光标移至复选箱内，然后按 Space 键来选择这个项目。要取消选择，再按一次 Space 键。

按 F12 来接受当前值，并继续到下一个对话框；这相当于按「确定」按钮。



#### Warning

除非一个对话框在等待你的输入，在安装进程中不要随意按键（这么做可能会导致无法预料的行为）。

## 7.3. Starting the Installation Program

To start, first make sure that you have all necessary resources for the installation. If you have already read through [3](#), and followed the instructions, you should be ready to start the installation process. When you have verified that you are ready to begin, boot the installation program using the Fedora DVD or CD-ROM #1 or any boot media that you have created.



### Note

偶尔有些硬件在安装过程中需要 [5](#) [Intel](#) [AMD](#) 驱动盘为安装程序不支持的硬件提供支持。参考 [了解更多信息](#)。

## 7.3.1. Booting the Installation Program on x86, AMD64, and Intel® 64 Systems

您可使用以下介质(依赖于您系统所能支持的)之一来启动安装程序:

*Fedora DVD/CD-ROM* — Your machine supports a bootable DVD/CD-ROM drive and you have the Fedora CD-ROM set or DVD.

*Boot CD-ROM* — Your machine supports a bootable CD-ROM drive and you want to perform network or hard drive installation.

*USB pen drive* — Your machine supports booting from a USB device.

*PXE boot via network* — Your machine supports booting from the network. This is an advanced installation path. Refer to [11](#) for additional information on this method.

To create a boot CD-ROM or to prepare your USB pen drive for installation, refer to [3.4.2](#) “”.

放入启动介质然后重启。BIOS设置需改为从CD-ROM或USB启动。



### Note

要修改x86, AMD64或Intel® 64 system平台的BIOS设置, 请注意计算机刚启动时的信息。有行文字会告诉您按哪个键进入BIOS设置。

Once you have entered your BIOS setup program, find the section where you can alter your boot sequence. The default is often C, A or A, C (depending on whether you boot from your hard drive [C] or a diskette drive [A]). Change this sequence so that the CD-ROM is first in your boot order and that C or A (whichever is your typical boot default) is second. This instructs the computer to first look at the CD-ROM drive for bootable media; if it does not find bootable media on the CD-ROM drive, it then checks your hard drive or diskette drive.

保存更改后退出BIOS。有关更多信息请参考计算机随机附送的说明书。

短暂停顿后, 将出现带有boot:提示的屏幕。该屏幕内容包含多个启动选项。每个选项又包含一个或多个帮助屏幕。要进入帮助屏幕, 请根据屏幕下方提示按合适的键。

当您启动安装程序时, 注意一下两条:

一旦boot:提示符出现, 在一分钟内不做操作的话安装程序将自动启动。要禁用此特性, 按帮助屏幕的功能键。


If you press a help screen function key, there is a slight delay while the help screen is read from the boot media.

Normally, you only need to press Enter to boot. Be sure to watch the boot messages to review if the Linux kernel detects your hardware. If your hardware is properly detected, continue to the next section. If it does not properly detect your hardware, you may need to restart the installation and use one of the boot options provided in [9](#).

### 7.3.2. Additional Boot Options

While it is easiest to boot using a CD-ROM or DVD and perform a graphical installation, sometimes there are installation scenarios where booting in a different manner may be needed. This section discusses additional boot options available for Fedora.

To pass options to the boot loader on an x86, AMD64, or Intel® 64 system, use the instructions as provided in the boot loader option samples below.



**Note**  
Refer to [9](#) for additional boot options not covered in this section.

To perform a text mode installation, at the installation boot prompt, type:

```
linux text
```

ISO images have an md5sum embedded in them. To test the checksum integrity of an ISO image, at the installation boot prompt, type:

```
linux mediacheck
```

The installation program prompts you to insert a CD or select an ISO image to test, and select OK to perform the checksum operation. This checksum operation can be performed on any Fedora CD and does not have to be performed in a specific order (for example, CD #1 does not have to be the first CD you verify). It is strongly recommended to perform this operation on any Fedora CD that was created from downloaded ISO images. This command works with the CD, DVD, hard drive ISO, and NFS ISO installation methods.

Also in the `images/` directory is the `boot.iso` file. This file is an ISO image that can be used to boot the installation program. To use the `boot.iso`, your computer must be able to boot from its CD-ROM drive, and its BIOS settings must be configured to do so. You must then burn the `boot.iso` file onto a recordable/rewriteable CD-ROM.

If you need to perform the installation in *serial mode*, type the following command:

```
linux console=<device>
```

For text mode installations, use:

```
linux text console=<device>
```

In the above command, `<device>` should be the device you are using (such as `ttyS0` or `ttyS1`). For example, `linux text console=ttyS0`.

Text mode installations using a serial terminal work best when the terminal supports UTF-8. Under UNIX and Linux, Kermit supports UTF-8. For Windows, Kermit '95 works well. Non-UTF-8 capable terminals works as long as only English is used during the installation process. An enhanced serial display can be used by passing the `utf8` command as a boot-time option to the installation program. For example:

```
linux console=ttyS0 utf8
```

### 7.3.2.1. Kernel Options

Options can also be passed to the kernel. For example, to apply updates for the anaconda installation program from a floppy disk enter:

```
linux updates
```

For text mode installations, use:

```
linux text updates
```

This command will prompt you to insert a floppy diskette containing updates for anaconda. It is not needed if you are performing a network installation and have already placed the updates image contents in `rhupdates/` on the server.

After entering any options, press Enter to boot using those options.

If you need to specify boot options to identify your hardware, please write them down. The boot options are needed during the boot loader configuration portion of the installation (refer to [7.22 “x86 AMD64 Intel 64 Boot Loader”](#) for more information).

For more information on kernel options refer to [9](#).

## 7.4. 选择安装方法

你想使用哪一种安装方法？可用的安装方法如下所列：

### DVD/CD-ROM

If you have a DVD/CD-ROM drive and the Fedora CD-ROMs or DVD you can use this method. Refer to [7.5 “ ”](#), for DVD/CD-ROM installation instructions.

### Hard Drive

If you have copied the Fedora ISO images to a local hard drive, you can use this method. You need a boot CD-ROM (use the `linux askmethod` boot option). Refer to [7.6 “ ”](#), for hard drive installation instructions.

### NFS

If you are installing from an NFS server using ISO images or a mirror image of Fedora, you can use this method. You need a boot CD-ROM (use the `linux askmethod` boot option). Refer to [7.8 “ NFS ”](#) for network installation instructions. Note that NFS installations may also be performed in GUI mode.

## URL

If you are installing directly from an HTTP (Web) server or FTP server, use this method. You need a boot CD-ROM (use the linux askmethod boot option). Refer to [7.9 “Installing via FTP or HTTP”](#), for FTP and HTTP installation instructions.

If you booted the distribution DVD and did not use the alternate installation source option askmethod, the next stage loads automatically from the DVD. Proceed to [7.10 “ ”](#).

 CD/DVD Activity

If you boot any Fedora installation media, the installation program loads its next stage from that disc. This happens regardless of which installation method you choose, unless you eject the disc before you proceed. The installation program still downloads *package data* from the source you choose.

## 7.5. 从光盘中安装

To install Fedora from a DVD/CD-ROM, place the DVD or CD #1 in your DVD/CD-ROM drive and boot your system from the DVD/CD-ROM. Even if you booted from alternative media, you can still install Fedora from CD or DVD media.

安装程序将会检测你的系统，并试图识别你的光盘驱动器。它会开始寻找一个 IDE（又称 ATAPI）光盘驱动器。

 Note

To abort the installation process at this time, reboot your machine and then eject the boot media. You can safely cancel the installation at any point before the About to Install screen. Refer to [7.24 “ ”](#) for more information.

如果你的光盘驱动器没有被检测到，而且它是一个 SCSI 光盘，安装程序将会请你选择一个 SCSI 驱动程序。选择与你的适配器最接近的驱动程序。如果必要，你可以为驱动程序指定选项，然而，多数驱动程序会被你的 SCSI 适配器自动检测到。

If the DVD/CD-ROM drive is found and the driver loaded, the installer will present you with the option to perform a media check on the DVD/CD-ROM. This will take some time, and you may opt to skip over this step. However, if you later encounter problems with the installer, you should reboot and perform the media check before calling for support. From the media check dialog, continue to the next stage of the installation process (refer to [7.10 “ ”](#)).

### 7.5.1. 如果没有发现 IDE 光盘怎么办？

如果你的系统上有一个 IDE (ATAPI) 光盘，但是安装程序没有成功地找到它，反而向你询问你的光盘驱动器的类型，请尝试下列引导命令。重新开始安装，然后在 boot: 提示后输入 `linux hdX=cdrom`。根据光盘连接的接口以及它是被配置为主还是次而定，把 **X** 替换成以下字母之一：

- a — 第一个 IDE 控制器，主
- b — 第一个 IDE 控制器，次
- c — 第二个 IDE 控制器，主



d — 第二个 IDE 控制器，次

如果你有第三个及（或）第四个控制器，请按字母顺序，从主到次为控制器分派字母。

## 7.6. 从硬盘安装

The Select Partition screen applies only if you are installing from a disk partition (that is, if you selected Hard Drive in the Installation Method dialog). This dialog allows you to name the disk partition and directory from which you are installing Fedora.

The ISO files must be located on a hard drive that is either internal to the computer, or attached to the machine by USB. In addition the install.img file from within the ISO files must be copied to a directory named images. Use this option to install Fedora on computers that are without a network connection or CD/DVD drives.

按以下步骤从ISO中提取install.img:

```
mount -t iso9660 /path/to/Fedora11.iso /mnt/point -o loop,ro
cp -pr /mnt/point/images /path/images/
umount /mnt/point
```

从硬盘安装之前，先检查分区类型以保证Fedora可以读取。要在Windows下查看分区类型，请使用磁盘管理工具。要在Linux下查看，使用fdisk。



### 无法从LVM分区安装

您不能在LVM(逻辑卷管理)管理的分区上使用ISO文件。



图 7.3. 硬盘驱动器安装的选择分区对话框

从可用的分区列表中选择含有ISO文件的分区。内置IDE，SATA，SCSI和USB设备名字以/dev/sd开头。每个独立驱动器都有对应的字母，例如/dev/sda。驱动器上的分区按数字排列，例如/dev/sda1。

同时指定镜像所在目录。输入含有ISO镜像文件的完整路径。下面列表中显示了一些如何输入此信息的例子。

Partition type	卷	到文件的原始路径	要使用的目录
VFAT	D:\	D:\Downloads\F11	/Downloads/F11

Partition type	卷	到文件的原始路径	要使用的目录
ext2, ext3, ext4	/home	/home/user1/F11	/user1/F11

表 7.2. 不同分区类型的ISO镜像位置

如果ISO镜像位于分区的根(顶级)目录下, 则输入/。如果ISO镜像位于挂载分区的子目录中, 则输入那个分区中包含ISO镜像的目录名。例如, ISO镜像所在分区通常挂载为/home/, 镜像位于/home/new/下, 那么您需输入/new/。



Select OK to continue. Proceed with [7.10](#) “ ”.

## 7.7. 执行网络安装

The installation program is network-aware and can use network settings for a number of functions. For instance, you can install Fedora from a network server using FTP, HTTP, or NFS protocols. You can also instruct the installation program to consult additional software repositories later in the process.

如果你要执行的是网络安装, 「配置 TCP/IP」对话框就会出现。该对话框向你询问 IP 和其它网络地址。你可以选择通过 DHCP 或手工地配置设备的 IP 地址和子网掩码。

默认情况下, 安装程序使用 DHCP 自动提供网络设置。如果您使用 cable 或者 DSL 调制解调器、路由器、防火墙或者其它网络硬件与互联网沟通, 那么 DHCP 是一个合适的选项。如果您的网络没有 DHCP 服务器, 那么请取消对 使用动态 IP 配置 (DHCP) 的选择。

输入在安装过程中使用的 IP 地址, 然后按 Enter 键。

The installation program supports only the IPv4 protocol. Refer also to [7.15](#) “*Network Configuration*” for more information on configuring your network.

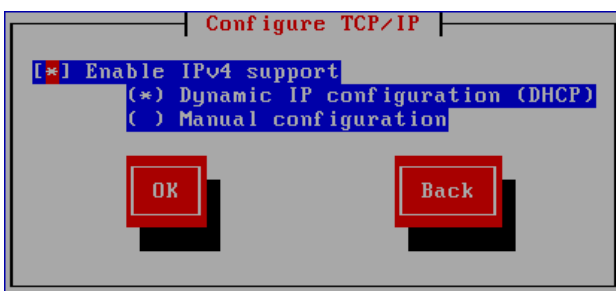


图 7.4. TCP/IP 配置

安装完成后, 将会把这些设置转移至您的系统中。

您可以从Web, FTP, 本地或Internet上的NFS服务器上安装。您也可以从您自己的镜像或由社区成员维护的公共镜像上安装Fedora。为了保证连接尽可能的快和稳定, 请使用离你较近的服务器。

The Fedora Project maintains a list of Web and FTP public mirrors, sorted by region, at <http://fedoraproject.org/wiki/Mirrors>. To determine the complete directory path for the installation files, add /11/

Fedora/**architecture**/os/ to the path shown on the web page. A correct mirror location for an i386 system resembles the URL <http://mirror.example.com/pub/fedora/linux/releases/11/Fedora/i386/os>.

If you are installing via NFS, proceed to [7.8 “ NFS ”](#).

If you are installing via Web or FTP, proceed to [7.9 “Installing via FTP or HTTP”](#).

## 7.8. 通过 NFS 安装

NFS 对话框只在你从 NFS 服务器中安装时才会出现（如果你在「安装方法」中选择了「NFS 映像」的话）。

输入你的 NFS 服务器的域名或 IP 地址。譬如，如果你是从 example.com 域的 eastcoast 主机上安装的话，在「NFS 服务器」字段中输入 eastcoast.example.com。

接下来，输入导出目录的名称。如果你遵循了 [3.5 “ ”](#) 中描述的设置步骤，你将应该输入目录 `/export/directory/`。

If the NFS server is exporting a mirror of the Fedora installation tree, enter the directory which contains the root of the installation tree. You will enter an Installation Key later on in the process which will determine which subdirectories are used to install from. If everything was specified properly, a message appears indicating that the installation program for Fedora is running.

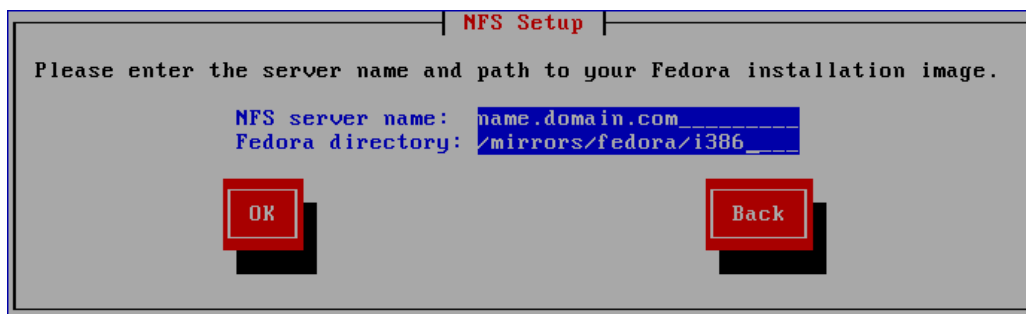


图 7.5. NFS 设置对话框

If the NFS server is exporting the ISO images of the Fedora CD-ROMs, enter the directory which contains the ISO images.

Next, the Welcome dialog appears.

## 7.9. Installing via FTP or HTTP

The URL dialog applies only if you are installing from a FTP or HTTP server (if you selected URL in the Installation Method dialog). This dialog prompts you for information about the FTP or HTTP server from which you are installing Fedora.

Enter the name or IP address of the FTP or HTTP site you are installing from, and the name of the directory containing your architecture. For example, if the FTP or HTTP site contains the directory `/mirrors/Fedora/arch/`, enter `/mirrors/Fedora/arch/` (where *arch* is replaced with the architecture type of your system, such as i386). If everything was specified properly, a message box appears indicating that files are being retrieved from the server.

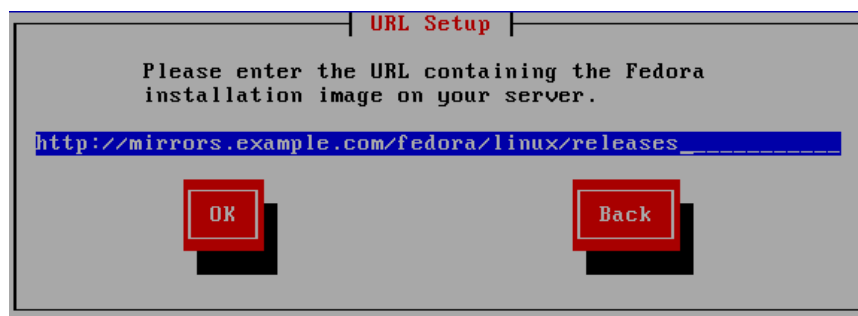


图 7.6. URL Setup Dialog

Next, the Welcome dialog appears.

**Note**

You can save disk space by using the ISO images you have already copied to the server. To accomplish this, install Fedora using ISO images without copying them into a single tree by loopback mounting them. For each ISO image:

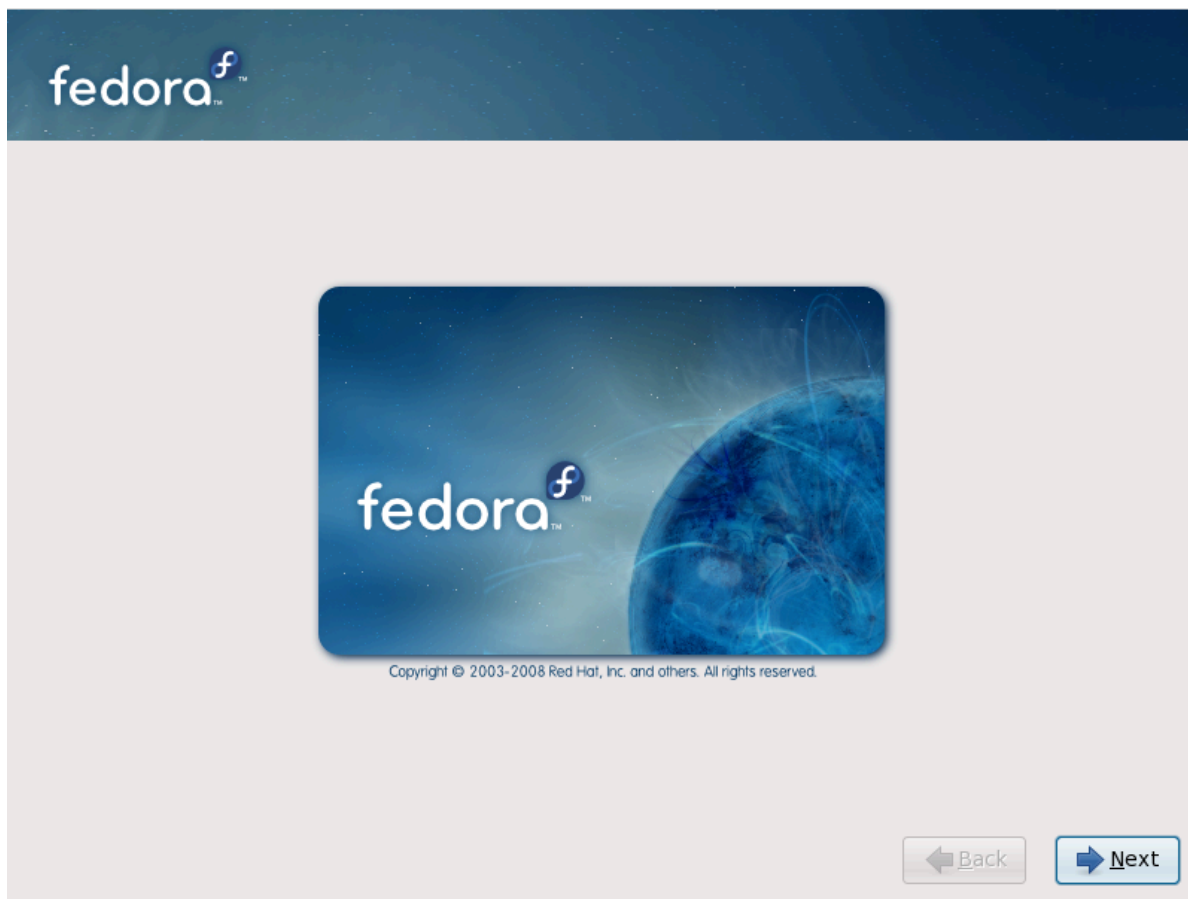
```
mkdir discX
```

```
mount -o loop Fedora11-discX.iso discX
```

Replace X with the corresponding disc number.

## 7.10. 欢迎使用

The Welcome screen does not prompt you for any input.



点击「下一步」按钮来继续。

## 7.11. Language Selection

用鼠标选择安装时所使用的语言（参阅 [7.7 “Language Selection”](#)）。

你在这里选择的语言将成为操作系统的缺省语言。选择恰当的语言会在稍后的安装中帮助你定位时区。安装程序将会试图根据你在这个屏幕上所指定的信息来选择恰当的时区。

To add support for additional languages, customize the installation at the package selection stage. For more information, refer to [7.23.2.2 “Additional Language Support”](#).

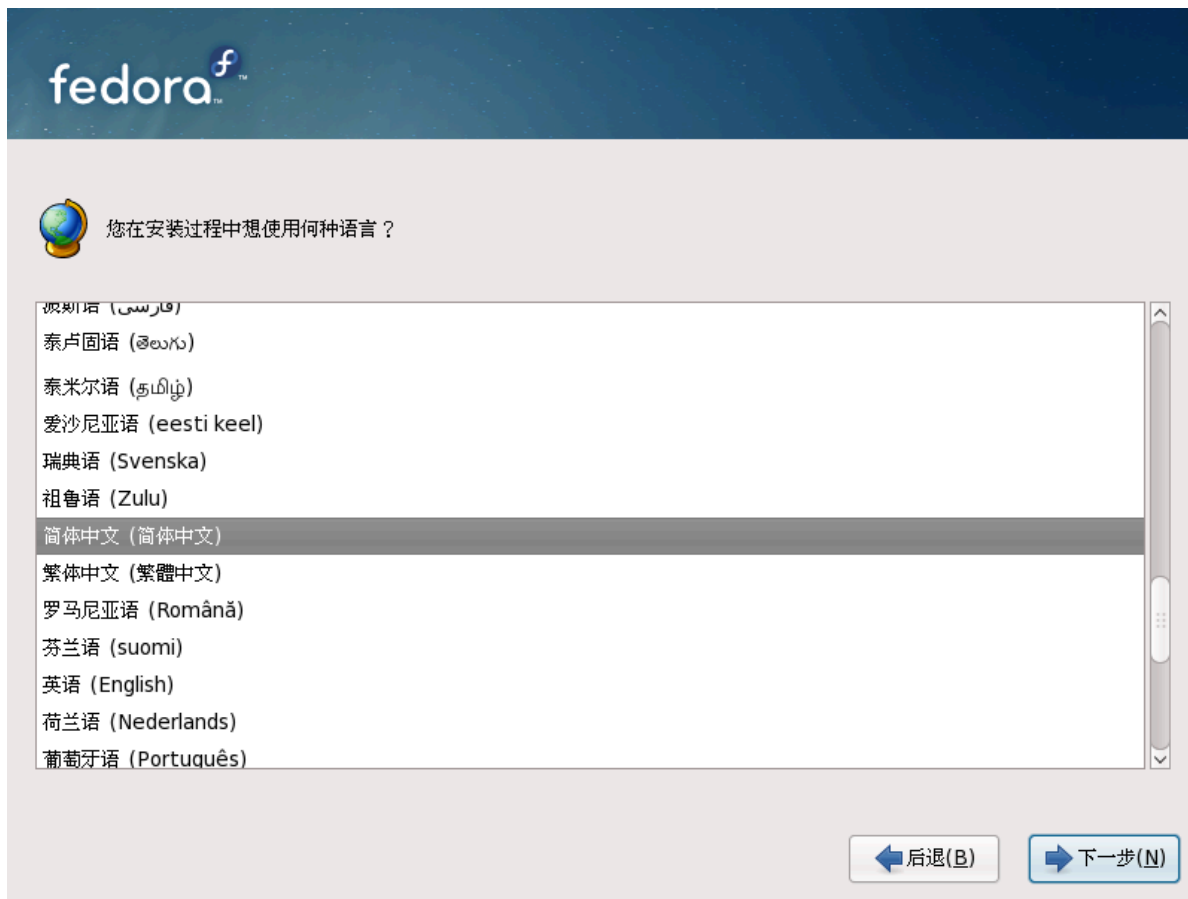


图 7.7. Language Selection

当你选定了恰当的语言后，点击「下一步」来继续。

## 7.12. Keyboard Configuration

用鼠标选择安装时所使用的和系统缺省的键盘类型（如，U.S. English）（参考下面的图表）。

选定后，点击「下一步」来继续。

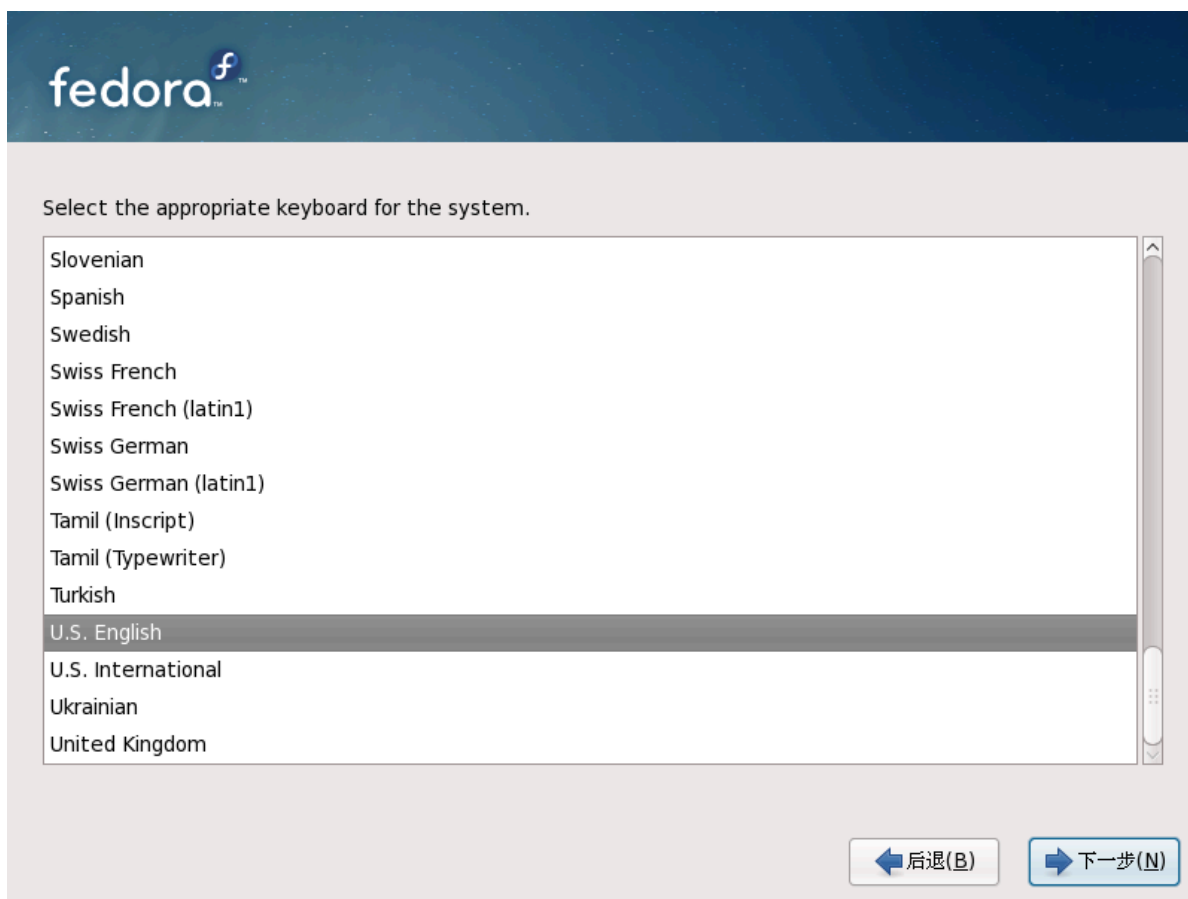


图 7.8. Keyboard Configuration

 **Note**  
要在安装结束后改变键盘类型，可以使用「键盘配置工具」。

在 shell 提示下键入 `system-config-keyboard` 命令来启动「键盘配置工具」。如果你不是根用户，它会提示你输入根口令再继续。

### 7.13. Initializing the Hard Disk

If no readable partition tables are found on existing hard disks, the installation program asks to initialize the hard disk. This operation makes any existing data on the hard disk unreadable. If your system has a brand new hard disk with no operating system installed, or you have removed all partitions on the hard disk, answer Yes.

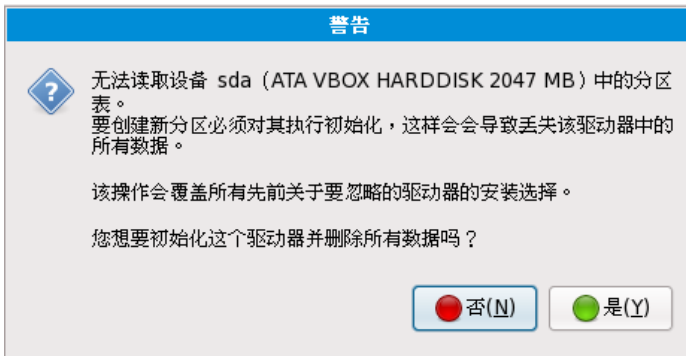



图 7.9. Warning screen - initializing hard drive

Certain RAID systems or other nonstandard configurations may be unreadable to the installation program and the prompt to initialize the hard disk may appear. The installation program responds to the physical disk structures it is able to detect.

 **Detach Unneeded Disks**  
If you have a nonstandard disk configuration that can be detached during installation and detected and configured afterward, power off the system, detach it, and restart the installation.

## 7.14. 升级已有的系统

安装程序自动地检测出任何已有的 Fedora 安装。升级程序会以新版本软件更新系统中已有的软件，并且不会移除用户个人目录中的任何数据。您的硬盘上已有的分区结构也不会变化。多数的软件包升级不会修改系统配置，而是会产生一个新的配置文件，您可以稍后检视它们。

### 7.14.1. 升级检测

如果系统中已经存在 Fedora 或者 Red Hat Linux 的安装，安装程序将会提示一个对话框，询问师傅希望对现有的安装进行升级。要升级已有的系统，在下拉菜单中选择合适的系统，然后选择 下一步。





图 7.10. The upgrade screen



### 手动安装的软件

Software you have installed manually on your existing Fedora or Red Hat Linux system may behave differently after an upgrade. You may need to manually reinstall or recompile this software after an upgrade to ensure it performs correctly on the updated system.

## 7.14.2. 使用安装程序升级



### 推荐进行全新安装

In general, the Fedora Project recommends that you keep user data on a separate `/home` partition and perform a fresh installation. For more information on partitions and how to set them up, refer to [7.18 “Disk Partitioning Setup”](#).

如果您选择用安装程序升级系统，所有的同Fedora软件冲突的非Fedora软件都会被覆盖。在开始更新之前，请制作系统当前已安装软件包的列表，以备参考。

```
rpm -qa --qf '%{NAME} %{VERSION}-%{RELEASE} %{ARCH}\n' > ~/old-pkglist.txt
```

完成安装之后，对照列表找出需要重新编译或者从非Fedora软件源下载的软件。

下一步，备份所有的系统配置数据。

```
su -c 'tar czf /tmp/etc-`date +%F`.tar.gz /etc' su -c 'mv /tmp/etc-*.tar.gz /home'
```

Make a complete backup of any important data before performing an upgrade. Important data may include the contents of your entire /home directory as well as content from services such as an Apache, FTP, or SQL server, or a source code management system. Although upgrades are not destructive, if you perform one improperly there is a small possibility of data loss.



### 存储备份

注意上面的例子里，我们把所有的备份资料都存储到了/home目录里。如果您的/home不是一个单独的分区，请把您的备份存储到另外一个设备里，比如CD/DVD盘片或者外置硬盘。

需要关于升级的更多信息，请参考 [16.2 “ ”](#)。

### 7.14.3. 更新引导加载程序

Your completed Fedora installation must be registered in the *boot loader* to boot properly. A boot loader is software on your machine that locates and starts the operating system. Refer to [7.22 “x86 AMD64 Intel 64 Boot Loader ”](#) for more information about boot loaders.

如果已有的引导加载程序是由某个 Linux 发行版安装的，安装程序可以修改它为引导新的 Fedora 系统。要更新已有的 Linux 引导加载程序，选择 Update boot loader configuration(升级引导加载程序配置)。当您升级已有的 Fedora; 或 Red Hat Linux 安装的时候，这是默认选项。

*GRUB* 是 Fedora 的标准引导加载程序。如果您的计算机使用另外一种引导加载程序，类似 BootMagic™, System Commander™ 或由 Microsoft Windows 安装的加载程序，Fedora 将无法更新它们。这种情况下，选择 Skip boot loader updating(跳过引导加载程序升级)。在安装程序结束之后，参考那些产品的说明书来查找帮助。

只有当您确定要替换现有的引导加载程序的时候，才能在升级过程中选择安装新的引导加载程序。如果您安装了新的引导加载程序，在仔细配置新的引导加载程序之前，可能无法启动这台机器上其他的操作系统。选择 Create new boot loader configuration(创建新的引导加载程序配置)来删除已有的引导加载程序并安装 GRUB。

做出选择之后，点击 下一步 来继续。

## 7.15. Network Configuration

Fedora contains support for both IPv4 and IPv6. However, by default, the installation program configures network interfaces on your computer for IPv4, and to use DHCP via NetworkManager. Currently NetworkManager does not support IPv6. If your network only supports IPv6 you should use system-config-network after installation to configure your network interfaces.

Setup prompts you to supply a host name and domain name for this computer, in the format *hostname.domainname*. Many networks have a DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) service that automatically supplies connected systems with a domain name, leaving the user to enter a hostname.




图 7.11. Setting the hostname

To set up a network that is behind an Internet firewall or router, you may want to use *hostname.localdomain* for your Fedora system. If you have more than one computer on this network, you should give each one a separate host name in this domain.

 **有效的主机名**  
可以为系统起任何名字，只要完整的名称是唯一的。主机名只能包含字母，数字和连字符。

On some networks, the DHCP provider also provides the name of the computer, or hostname. The complete hostname includes both the name of the machine and the name of the domain of which it is a member, such as *machine1.example.com*. The machine name (or "short hostname") is *machine1*, and the domain name is *example.com*.

如果您的 Fedora 是 连接到互联网，您必须格外小心以避免来自上级服务供应商的服务中断或者危险操作。有关这些问题的讨论已经超过了本文档的范围。

 **Modem Configuration**  
The installation program does not configure modems. Configure these devices after installation with the Network utility. The settings for your modem are specific to your particular Internet Service Provider (ISP).

### 7.15.1. Manual configuration

Installations that require certain advanced configurations cannot succeed without network connectivity during the installation process, for example, installations on systems with iSCSI drives. In situations where successful installation depends upon correct network settings, the installation program will present you with a dialog that allows you to confirm these details.



图 7.12. Manual network configuration

If your network does not have DHCP enabled, or if you need to override the DHCP settings, select the network interface that you plan to use from the Interfaces menu. Clear the checkbox for Use dynamic IP configuration (DHCP). You can now enter an IPv4 address and netmask for this system in the form *address /netmask*, along with the gateway address and nameserver address for your network.

Click OK to accept these settings and continue.

## 7.16. 时区配置

Specify a time zone even if you plan to use NTP (Network Time Protocol) to maintain the accuracy of the system clock.

通过选择最接近你的计算机的物理位置的城市来设置时区。你可以点击地图来定位某一特定地区。

Specify a time zone even if you plan to use NTP (Network Time Protocol) to maintain the accuracy of the system clock.

选择时区的方法有两种：

用鼠标在互动地图上点击指定城市（用黄点表示）。一个红色的 X 符号会出现来标明你的选择。

你还可以在屏幕底部的列表中选择时区。使用鼠标点击位置来突出显示你的选择。



图 7.13. 配置时区

If Fedora is the only operating system on your computer, select System clock uses UTC. The system clock is a piece of hardware on your computer system. Fedora uses the timezone setting to determine the offset between the local time and UTC on the system clock. This behavior is standard for UNIX-like operating systems.



### Windows and the System Clock

Do not enable the System clock uses UTC option if your machine also runs Microsoft Windows. Microsoft operating systems change the BIOS clock to match local time rather than UTC. This may cause unexpected behavior under Fedora.



### Note

要在安装完成后改变时区配置，你可以使用「时间和日期属性工具」。

在 shell 提示下键入 `system-config-date` 命令来启动「时间和日期属性工具」。如果您不是根用户，它会提示您输入根密码后再继续。

如果要在文本模式下运行「时间和日期属性工具」，你可以使用 `timeconfig` 命令。

Select Next to proceed.

## 7.17. 设置根密码

Setting up a root account and password is one of the most important steps during your installation. Your root account is similar to the administrator account used on Microsoft Windows machines. The root account is used to install packages, upgrade RPMs, and perform most system maintenance. Logging in as root gives you complete control over your system.

### Note

根用户（又称超级用户）对整个系统有完全的控制权；因此，最好执行系统维护或管理时使用根用户登录。



图 7.14. Root Password

请只有在进行系统管理时才使用根帐号。创建一个非根帐号来做日常工作。若你需要快速解决某个问题时，用 `su -` 命令暂时登录为根用户。遵循这些最基本的原则将会减少你因键入错误或不正确的命令而损害系统的机会。

### Note

要变成根用户，在终端机窗口的 shell 提示下键入 `su -`，并按回车键，然后输入根密码并按回车键。

The installation program prompts you to set a root password<sup>1</sup> for your system. *You cannot proceed to the next stage of the installation process without entering a root password.*

根口令必须至少包括六个字符；你键入的口令不会在屏幕上显示。你必须把口令输入两次；如果两个口令不匹配，安装程序将会请你重新输入口令。

你应该把根口令设为你可以记住但又不容易被别人猜到的组合。你的名字、电话号码、`qwerty`、`password`、`root`、`123456`、以及 `anteater` 都是典型的坏口令。好口令混合使用数字、大小写字母，并且不包含任何词典中的现成词汇。例如：`Aard387vark` 或 `420BMttNT`。请记住，口令是区分大小写的。如果你笔录下你的口令，请将之保存在一个安全的地方。然而，我们建议你不要笔录任何你创建的口令。



#### Note

不要使用本指南中提供的任何示范口令。使用其中任何一个，都可以被视为安全风险。



#### Note

在完成安装后，你如果想修改根密码，可以使用「根密码工具」。

在 shell 提示下键入 `system-config-rootpassword` 命令来启动「根密码工具」。如果您不是根用户，它会提示您输入根密码后再继续。

在Root密码中输入root密码。为安全起见Fedora将字符显示为星号。Confirm中再次输入密码以保证输入无误。设置好root密码后，选择下一步继续。

## 7.18. Disk Partitioning Setup

分区允许你将硬盘驱动器分隔成独立的区域，每个区域都如同是一个单独的硬盘驱动器。如果你运行多个操作系统，分区就特别有用。如果你还不确定怎样给系统分区，请阅读 [A](#)。

On this screen you can choose to create the default layout or choose to manual partition using the Create custom layout option.

前面三个选项允许你不必亲自为驱动器分区而执行自动安装。如果你对在系统上分区信心不足，建议你选择手工分区，而是让安装程序自动为你分区。

你也可以为安装配置 iSCSI 目标，或者在这个屏幕上点击「高级存储配置」按钮来禁用 dmraid 设备。详情请参考 [7.19 “Advanced Storage Options”](#)。



#### Warning

The PackageKit update software downloads updated packages to `/var/cache/yum/` by default. If you partition the system manually, and create a separate `/var/` partition, be sure to create the partition large enough (3.0 GB or more) to download package updates.

<sup>1</sup> A root password is the administrative password for your Fedora system. You should only log in as root when needed for system maintenance. The root account does not operate within the restrictions placed on normal user accounts, so changes made as root can have implications for your entire system.



图 7.15. Disk Partitioning Setup

If you choose to create a custom layout, refer to 7.21 “ ”.



### Warning

如果你在安装过程的「磁盘分区设置」阶段看到一则和如下相似的消息：

"无法读 hda 设备上的分区表。要创建新分区，分区表必须被初始化这将破坏这个设备上的所有数据。"

you may not have a partition table on that drive or the partition table on the drive may not be recognizable by the partitioning software used in the installation program.

使用过 EZ-BIOS 之类程序的用户可能遇到过相似的问题，从而导致了数据丢失（假定安装前没有进行备份）。

No matter what type of installation you are performing, backups of the existing data on your systems should always be made.



## 7.18.1. RAID and Other Disk Devices

### 7.18.1.1. Hardware RAID

RAID, or Redundant Array of Independent Disks, allows a group, or array, of drives to act as a single device. Configure any RAID functions provided by the mainboard of your computer, or attached controller cards, before you begin the installation process. Each active RAID array appears as one drive within Fedora.


On systems with more than one hard drive you may configure Fedora to operate several of the drives as a Linux RAID array without requiring any additional hardware.

### 7.18.1.2. Software RAID

You can use the Fedora installation program to create Linux software RAID arrays, where RAID functions are controlled by the operating system rather than dedicated hardware. These functions are explained in detail in [7.21](#) “[Software RAID](#)”.

### 7.18.1.3. FireWire and USB Disks

Some FireWire and USB hard disks may not be recognized by the Fedora installation system. If configuration of these disks at installation time is not vital, disconnect them to avoid any confusion.



### Post-installation Usage

You can connect and configure external FireWire and USB hard disks after installation. Most such devices are recognized by the kernel and available for use at that time.

## 7.19. Advanced Storage Options



图 7.16. Advanced Storage Options

From this screen you can choose to disable a dmraid device, in which case the individual elements of the dmraid device will appear as separate hard drives. You can also choose to configure an iSCSI (SCSI over TCP/IP) target. See [B, \*iSCSI disks\*](#) for an introduction to iSCSI.

To configure an iSCSI target invoke the 'Configure iSCSI Parameters' dialog by selecting 'Add iSCSI target' and clicking on the 'Add Drive' button. Fill in the details for the iSCSI target IP and provide a unique iSCSI initiator name to identify this system. If the iSCSI target uses CHAP (Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol) for authentication, enter the CHAP username and password. If your environment uses 2-way CHAP

(also called "Mutual CHAP"), also enter the reverse CHAP username and password. Click the 'Add target' button to attempt connection to the iSCSI target using this information.



图 7.17. 配置 iSCSI 参数

请注意，如果你输入了错误的信息，你可以用不同的 iSCSI 目标 IP 地址进行尝试，但是为了修改 iSCSI 启动器的名字，你将需要重新启动这个安装。

## 7.20. Create Default Layout

自动分区在有关哪些数据要从系统中删除（若适用）这一方面允许你有控制权。可供你选择的选项有：

「删除选定驱动器上的所有分区并按缺省的格式创建分区」 — 选择这一选项来删除你的硬盘驱动器上的所有分区（这包括由其它操作系统创建的分区，如 Windows VFAT 或 NTFS 分区）。



### Warning

If you select this option, all data on the selected hard drive(s) is removed by the installation program. Do not select this option if you have information that you want to keep on the hard drive(s) where you are installing Fedora.

「删除选定驱动器上的所有 Linux 分区并按缺省的格式创建分区」 — 选择该选项来只删除 Linux 分区（在以前安装 Linux 时创建的分区）。这不会影响你的硬盘驱动器上可能有的其它分区，例如：VFAT 或 FAT32 分区。

「使用选定磁盘上的空闲空间并按缺省的格式创建分区」 — 选择这一选项来保留你当前的数据和分区，假设你的硬盘驱动器上有足够的可用空闲空间的话。



图 7.18. Create Default Layout

Using your mouse, choose the storage drive(s) on which you want Fedora to be installed. If you have two or more drives, you can choose which drive(s) should contain this installation. Unselected drives, and any data on them, are not touched.



### Warning

备份系统上的所有数据是明智之举。例如，如果你要升级或创建一个双引导系统，你应该备份这个硬盘驱动器上你想保存的数据。有时候错误难免会发生，甚至会导致所有数据丢失。



### Note

如果你有一个 RAID 卡，请注意，某些 BIOS 不支持从 RAID 卡中引导。在这类情况下，`/boot/` 分区一定要在 RAID 阵列之外的分区上创建，比如在一个分开的硬盘驱动器上。用有问题的 RAID 卡来创建分区，有必要使用一个内部硬盘驱动器。

`/boot/` 分区也是软件 RAID 设置所必需的。

如果你已选定要自动为你的系统分区，你应该选择「复审」，然后手工地编辑 `/boot/` 分区。

选择加密系统 来加密除 `/boot` 分区之外的所有分区。

使用高级存储选项选项，如果：

您打算将Fedora安装到通过iSCSI协议连接的驱动器上。选择高级存储选项，选择添加iSCSI目标，然后选择添加驱动器。输入IP地址和iSCSI初始名称，选择添加驱动器。

您想要禁用启动时检测到的dmraid设备。

To review and make any necessary changes to the partitions created by automatic partitioning, select the Review option. After selecting Review and clicking Next to move forward, the partitions created for you by anaconda appear. You can make modifications to these partitions if they do not meet your needs.



### Installing in text mode

如果在字符模式下安装Fedora，您只能使用本节所讲的默认分区设置。因此尽管您可以选择使用整个驱动器，删除已由Linux分区或使用空闲空间，但是您不能修改分区设置。也就是说您不能在安装程序自动添加或删除的分区或文件系统之外添加删除分区或文件系统。如果安装时需要自定义分区设置，您应该通过VNC连接或kickstart来运行图形化安装。

另外，像LVM，加密文件系统和可重调文件系统等高级选项仅在图形模式和kickstart中提供。

当你选好之后，点击「下一步」来继续。

## 7.21. 为您的系统分区

If you chose one of the three automatic partitioning options and did not select Review, skip ahead to [7.23 “Package Group Selection”](#).

If you chose one of the automatic partitioning options and selected Review, you can either accept the current partition settings (click Next), or modify the setup manually in the partitioning screen.



### 注意

Please note that in the text mode installation it is not possible to work with LVM (Logical Volumes) beyond viewing the existing setup. LVM can only be set up during graphical installation.

If you chose to create a custom layout, you must tell the installation program where to install Fedora. This is done by defining mount points for one or more disk partitions in which Fedora is installed. You may also need to create and/or delete partitions at this time.



### Note

如果你还没有计划怎么设置分区，你可以参考 [A](#)，和 [7.21.4 “](#)”。至少，你需要一个大小合适的根分区和两倍于系统物理内存的交换分区。Itanium 系统的用户应该有一个大约 100 MB 的 FAT (VFAT) 格式的 /boot/efi/ 分区、至少 512 MB 的交换分区和大小合适的根分区 (/)。



图 7.19. Partitioning on x86, AMD64, and Intel 64 Systems

With the exception of certain esoteric situations, anaconda can handle the partitioning requirements for a typical installation.

### 7.21.1. 硬盘的图形化表示

The partitioning screen offers a graphical representation of your hard drive(s).

单击鼠标来突出显示图形化表示中的某一字段。双击来编辑某个现存的分区或从现存空闲空间中创建分区。

在显示之上，你会看到「Drive」名称（如 /dev/hda），「Geom」（显示了硬盘的几何属性，包括了三个数字分别代表硬盘汇报的柱面、磁头和扇区数量），以及被安装程序检测到的硬盘驱动器「Model」。

### 7.21.2. The partitioning screen

These buttons are used to change the attributes of a partition (for example the file system type and mount point) and also to create RAID devices. Buttons on this screen are also used to accept the changes you have made, or to exit the partitioning screen. For further explanation, take a look at each button in order:

**New:** Select this option to add a partition or LVM physical volume to the disk. In the Add partition dialog, choose a mount point and a partition type. If you have more than one disk on the system, choose which disks the partition may inhabit. Indicate a size in megabytes for the partition. If you wish to encrypt the partition, select that option.



### Illegal Partitions

You cannot create separate partitions for the `/bin/`, `/dev/`, `/etc/`, `/lib/`, `/proc/`, `/root/`, and `/sbin/` directories. These directories must reside on the `/` (root) partition.

The `/boot` partition may not reside on an LVM volume group. Create the `/boot` partition before configuring any volume groups. Furthermore, you cannot use the `ext4` or `btrfs` filesystems for the `/boot` partition.

Avoid placing `/usr` on a separate partition. If `/usr` does not reside on the `/` (root) partition, the boot process becomes more complex and some systems (for example, those with iSCSI storage) will fail to boot.

You may also choose from three options for sizing your partition:

#### Fixed size

Use a fixed size as close to your entry as possible.

#### Fill all space up to

Grow the partition to a maximum size of your choice.

#### Fill to maximum allowable size

Grow the partition until it fills the remainder of the selected disks.



### Partition Sizes

The actual partition on the disk may be slightly smaller or larger than your choice. Disk geometry issues cause this effect, not an error or bug.

Select the **Encrypt partition** option to encrypt all information on the disk partition.

After you enter the details for your partition, select **OK** to continue. If you chose to encrypt the partition, the installer prompts you to assign a passphrase by typing it twice. For hints on using good passphrases, refer to [7.17](#) “[Using Good Passphrases](#)”.

**「编辑」**：用来修改目前在「分区」部分中选定分区的属性。选择「编辑」打开一个对话框。部分或全部字段可被编辑，这要依据分区信息是否已被写入磁盘而定。

你还可以编辑图形化显示所表示的空闲空间，从而在那个空间内创建一个新分区。你既可以突出显示空闲空间，然后选择「编辑」按钮，也可以双击空闲空间来编辑它。

要制作一个 RAID 设备，你必须首先创建（或重新利用现有的）软件 RAID 分区。一旦你已创建了两个或两个以上的软件 RAID 分区，选择「RAID」来把软件 RAID 分区连接为一个 RAID 设备。

**「删除」**：用来删除目前在「当前磁盘分区」部分中突出显示的分区的。你会被要求确认对任何分区的删除。

To delete an LVM physical volume, first delete any volume groups of which that physical volume is a member.

If you make a mistake, use the Reset option to abandon all the changes you have made.

Reset: Used to restore the partitioning screen to its original state. All changes made will be lost if you Reset the partitions.

RAID: Used to provide redundancy to any or all disk partitions. *It should only be used if you have experience using RAID.*

要制作一个 RAID 设备，你必须首先创建软件 RAID 分区。一旦你已创建了两个或两个以上的软件 RAID 分区，选择「RAID」来把软件 RAID 分区连接为一个 RAID 设备。

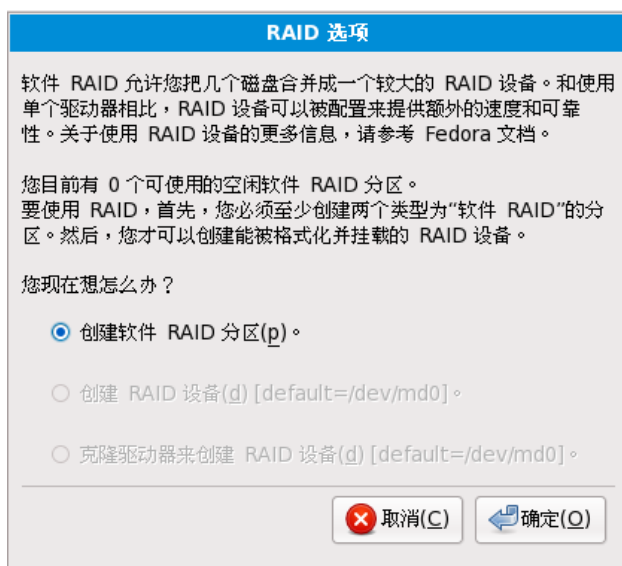


图 7.20. RAID options

#### Create a software RAID partition

Choose this option to add a partition for software RAID. This option is the only choice available if your disk contains no software RAID partitions.

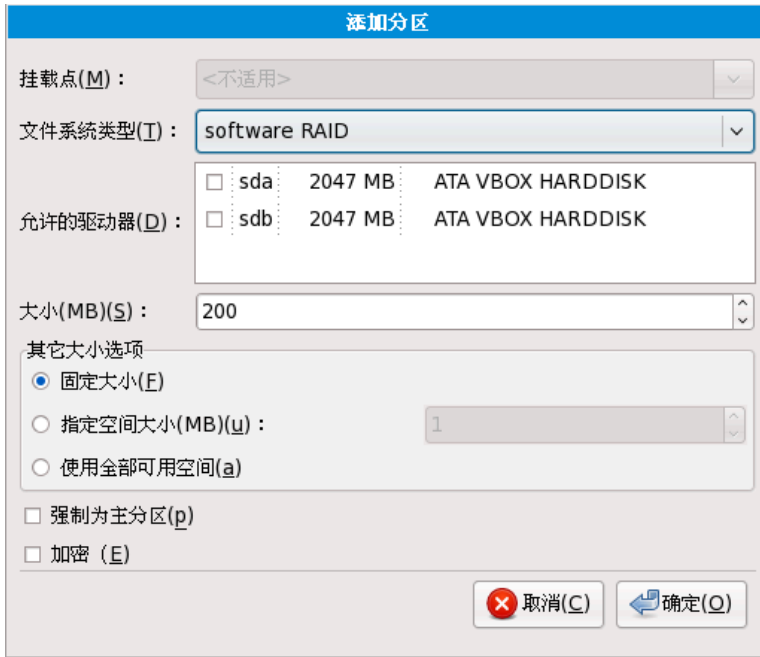


图 7.21. Create a software RAID partition

Create a RAID device

Choose this option to construct a RAID device from two or more existing software RAID partitions. This option is available if two or more software RAID partitions have been configured.

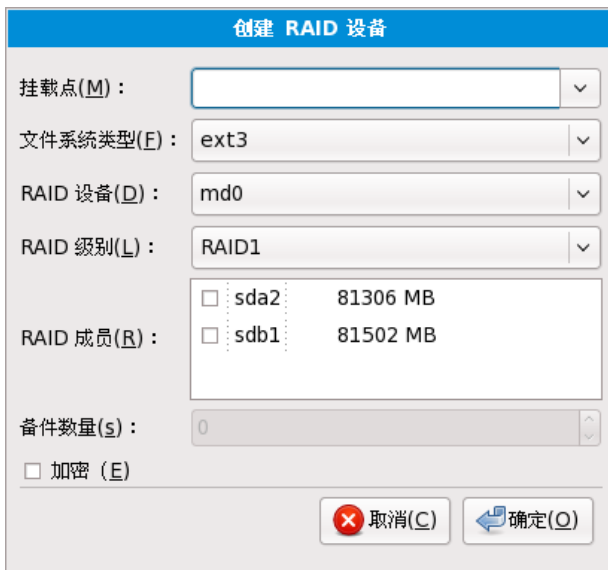


图 7.22. Create a RAID device

Clone a drive to create a RAID device

Choose this option to set up a RAID *mirror* of an existing disk. This option is available if two or more disks are attached to the system.



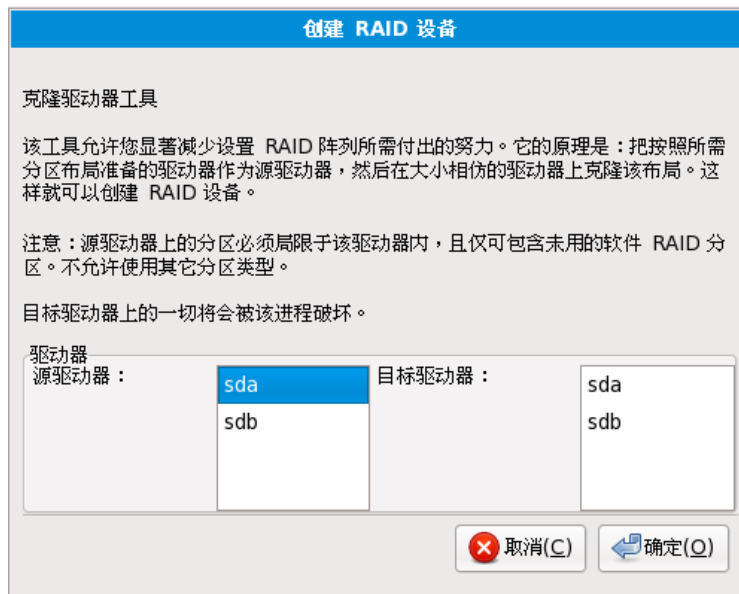


图 7.23. Clone a RAID device

LVM: Allows you to create an LVM logical volume. The role of LVM (Logical Volume Manager) is to present a simple logical view of underlying physical storage space, such as a hard drive(s). LVM manages individual physical disks — or to be more precise, the individual partitions present on them. *It should only be used if you have experience using LVM.* Note, LVM is only available in the graphical installation program.

To assign one or more physical volumes to a volume group, first name the volume group. Then select the physical volumes to be used in the volume group. Finally, configure logical volumes on any volume groups using the Add, Edit and Delete options.

You may not remove a physical volume from a volume group if doing so would leave insufficient space for that group's logical volumes. Take for example a volume group made up of two 5 GB LVM physical volume partitions, which contains an 8 GB logical volume. The installer would not allow you to remove either of the component physical volumes, since that would leave only 5 GB in the group for an 8 GB logical volume. If you reduce the total size of any logical volumes appropriately, you may then remove a physical volume from the volume group. In the example, reducing the size of the logical volume to 4 GB would allow you to remove one of the 5 GB physical volumes.



#### LVM Unavailable in Text Installs

LVM initial set up is not available in a text-mode installation. The installer allows you to edit pre-configured LVM volumes. If you need to create an LVM configuration from scratch, hit Alt+F2 to use the terminal, and run the `lvm` command. To return to the text-mode installation, hit Alt+F1.

### 7.21.3. 分区字段

在分区层次之上是代表你正创建的分区的信息的标签。这些标签定义如下：

「设备」：该字段显示分区的设备名。

「挂载点/RAID/Volume」：挂载点是文件卷在目录层次内存在的位置；文件卷在该位置上被“挂载”。该字段标明分区将被挂载的位置。如果某个分区存在，但还没有设立，那么你需要为其定义挂载点。双击分区或点击「编辑」按钮来为其定义挂载点。

Type: This field shows the partition's file system type (for example, ext2, ext3, ext4, or vfat).

「格式化」：该字段显示了正创建的分区是否会被格式化。

「大小 (MB)」：该字段显示了分区的大小 (MB)。

「开始」：该字段显示了分区在你的硬盘上开始的柱面。

「结束」：该字段显示了分区在你的硬盘上结束的柱面。

「隐藏 RAID 设备/LVM 卷组成员」：如果你不想看到创建的 RAID 设备或 LVM 卷组成员，选择该选项。

## 7.21.4. 推荐的分区方案

### 7.21.4.1. x86、AMD64 和 Intel® 64 位系统

x86 AMD64 Intel® 64 :

A swap partition

A /boot partition

A / partition

#### A swap partition (at least 256 MB)

Swap partitions are used to support virtual memory. In other words, data is written to a swap partition when there is not enough RAM to store the data your system is processing. In addition, certain power management features store all of the memory for a suspended system in the available swap partitions.

如果你不确定创建多大的交换分区，你可以指定两倍于系统物理内存的大小。分区类型必须是 swap。

创建大小合适的交换空间依赖于以下几个因素（按重要性依次排列）：

在机器上运行的应用程序。

机器上安装的物理内存数量。

操作系统的版本。

物理内存低于 2GB 时，交换空间应该是两倍于物理内存大小。对于任何高于 2GB 的内存，则为相同数量，但绝不能少于 32MB。

所以，如果：

M = 内存的 GB 数，S = 交换空间的 GB 数，然后

```
If M < 2
    S = M * 2
Else
```

$$S = M + 2$$

使用这个公式，物理内存为 2GB 的系统应该有 4GB 的交换空间，物理内存为 3GB 的系统应该有 5GB 交换空间。创建一个较大的交换分区在你计划将来升级内存的时候特别有帮助。

对于具备超大内存的系统（超过 32GB），你可能能够使用一个较小的交换分区（物理内存的一倍或更少）。

### A /boot/ partition (100 MB)

The partition mounted on /boot/ contains the operating system kernel (which allows your system to boot Fedora), along with files used during the bootstrap process. Due to limitations, creating a native ext3 partition to hold these files is required. For most users, a 100 MB boot partition is sufficient.



#### ext4 and Btrfs

The GRUB bootloader does not support the ext4 or Btrfs file systems. You cannot use an ext4 or Btrfs partition for /boot/.



#### Note

如果你的硬盘大于 1024 个柱面（而且你的系统至少是在两年前制造的），而且你想让 /（根）分区使用硬盘上的所有剩余空间，你可能需要创建一个 /boot 分区。



#### Note

如果你有一张 RAID 卡，请注意某些 BIOS 不支持从 RAID 卡中引导。在这种情况下，/boot/ 分区必须在 RAID 阵列之外被创建，如在一个单独的硬盘驱动器上创建。

### A root partition (3.0 GB – 5.0 GB)

This is where "/" (the root directory) is located. In this setup, all files (except those stored in /boot) are on the root partition.

A 3.0 GB partition allows you to install a minimal installation, while a 5.0 GB root partition lets you perform a full installation, choosing all package groups.



#### Root and /root

The / (or root) partition is the top of the directory structure. The /root directory/root (sometimes pronounced "slash-root") directory is the home directory of the user account for system administration.


Many systems have more partitions than the minimum listed above. Choose partitions based on your particular system needs. For example, consider creating a separate /home partition on systems that store user data. Refer to [7.21.4.1.1 “Advice on Partitions”](#) for more information.

If you create many partitions instead of one large / partition, upgrades become easier. Refer to the description the Edit option in [7.21.2 “The partitioning screen”](#) for more information.

The following table summarizes minimum partition sizes for the partitions containing the listed directories. You *do not* have to make a separate partition for each of these directories. For instance, if the partition containing `/foo` must be at least 500 MB, and you do not make a separate `/foo` partition, then the `/` (root) partition must be at least 500 MB.

Directory	Minimum size
<code>/</code>	250 MB
<code>/usr</code>	250 MB, but avoid placing this on a separate partition
<code>/tmp</code>	50 MB
<code>/var</code>	384 MB
<code>/home</code>	100 MB
<code>/boot</code>	75 MB

表 7.3. Minimum partition sizes



**Leave Excess Capacity Unallocated**  
Only assign storage capacity to those partitions you require immediately. You may allocate free space at any time, to meet needs as they occur. To learn about a more flexible method for storage management, refer to [D, Understanding LVM](#).


If you are not sure how best to configure the partitions for your computer, accept the default partition layout.

#### 7.21.4.1.1. Advice on Partitions

最佳分区设置取决于Linux系统的用途。以下关于如何分配磁盘空间的提示可能对您有所帮助。


如果您和其他用户想在系统上存储数据，可以在卷组中为`/home`目录创建一个独立的分区。有了独立的`/home`分区后，升级或重装Fedora时就不再需要删除用户的文件了。

Each kernel installed on your system requires approximately 10 MB on the `/boot` partition. Unless you plan to install a great many kernels, the default partition size of 100 MB for `/boot` should suffice.



**ext4 and Btrfs**  
The GRUB bootloader does not support the ext4 or Btrfs file systems. You cannot use an ext4 or btrfs partition for `/boot`.

`/var`目录包含了大量的安装程序文件，包括Apache web服务器。同时它也存放下载的更新包。确保`/var`目录所在分区有足够的空间来保存下载的更新和您的其它内容。



**Pending Updates**  
由于Fedora是一个不断更新的软件包集合，因此发行周期之后晚一些时间会提供大量的更新。您以后可以为安装源添加一个更新仓库来最小化这个过程。参考 [7.23.1 “Installing from Additional Repositories”](#) 了解更多信息。

Fedora系统中/usr目录存放主要软件。对于安装默认的软件包来说，至少需要4GB空间。如果您是程序开发人员或打算用Fedora学习软件开发，则需要8GB以上的空间。



### Do not place /usr on a separate partition

如果/usr是/之外一个独立分区的话，启动过程会变得更加复杂，某些情况下(如在iSCSI设备上安装)可能还会不工作。

考虑一下在LVM卷组中保留一点未分配空间。在您想要调整分区但又不想删除其它分区的数据时，这是个办法。

若您将子目录分配到各个分区中，那么在安装新版Fedora时您就可以保留这些子目录中的内容。例如在/var/lib/mysql中运行MySQL数据库，如果以后打算重装那么就on应该把该目录单独分一个区。

以下是针对一个80GB新硬盘，1GB内存的分区方案。注意为了以后的调整，大概10GB的卷组空间没有分配。



### Example Usage

这个方案并不是所有情形下最好的。

Partition	Size and type
/boot	100 MB ext3 partition
swap	2 GB swap
LVM物理卷	保留空间，做为一个LVM卷组

表 7.4. Example partition setup

物理卷分配到默认的卷组中并被分为以下逻辑卷：

Partition	Size and type
/	13 GB ext4
/var	4 GB ext4
/home	50 GB ext4

表 7.5. 示例分区设置：LVM物理卷

### 例 7.1. Example partition setup

## 7.21.5. 添加分区

要添加一个新的分区，选择新增按钮。一个对话框将出现（参考 [7.24 “](#) ”）。



### Note

你必须为本次按装指定至少一个分区。详情请见 [A,](#) 。

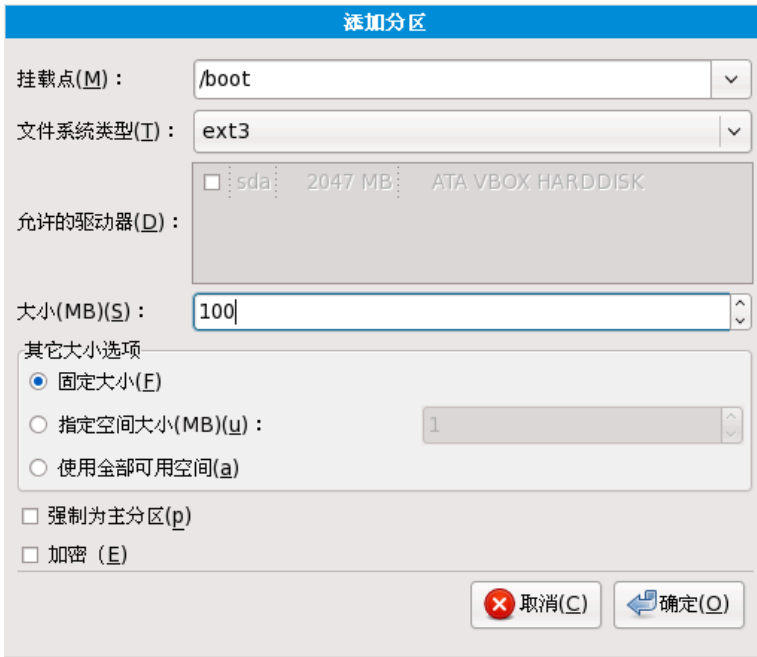


图 7.24. 创建一个新分区

「挂载点」：输入分区的挂载点。譬如，如果这个分区是根分区，输入 `/`；如果是 `/boot` 分区，输入 `/boot`，等等。你还可以使用下拉菜单来为你的分区选择正确的挂载点。而对于交换空间分区，则不应该设置挂载点 - 把文件系统类型设置为 `swap` 就足够了。

「文件系统类型」：用下拉菜单为这个分区选择合适的文件系统类型。关于文件系统的更多信息，请参阅 [7.21.5.1](#) “[文件系统类型](#)”。

「允许的驱动器」：这个字段包括在你的系统上安装的硬盘列表。如果某个硬盘的复选框被突出显示，则表示可以在该硬盘上创建想要的分区。如果那个复选框 打勾，那么这个分区将 在该硬盘上创建。通过不同的复选框设置，你可使 `anaconda` 在你需要的地方放置分区，或让 `anaconda` 来决定应该放置分区的地方。

「大小 (MB)」：输入分区的大小 (MB)。注意，该字段从 100MB 开始；若不改变，创建的分区将只有 100MB。

「其它大小选项」：选择是否要将分区保持为固定大小、允许它“增长”（使用硬盘驱动器上的可用空间）到某一程度，或允许它“增长”到使用全部硬盘驱动器上可用的剩余空间。

如果你选择 「指定空间大小 (MB)」，你必须在这个选项右侧的字段内给出大小限制。这会允许你在你的硬盘驱动器上保留一定的空间为将来使用。

「强制为主分区」：选择你创建的分区是否是磁盘的四个主分区之一。如果没有选定，这个分区将被创建为逻辑分区。详情请参考 [A.1.3](#) “[分区类型](#)”。

「确定」：当你对设置满意并想创建分区的时候，选择「确定」按钮。

「取消」：如果你不想创建这个分区，选择「取消」按钮。

### 7.21.5.1. 文件系统类型

Fedora 允许您根据分区将使用的文件系统来创建不同的分区类型。下面是对不同文件系统以及它们的使用方法的简单描述。

**Btrfs** — Btrfs是开发中的能管理更多、更大文件；支持比ext2、ext3和ext4更大的磁盘分区的文件系统。Btrfs设计要求可以容错，并可以更容易的检测出错误并修复。它使用校验和来确保文件数据和元数据的错误，并且追踪文件的改变，以提供备份和修复使用

因为Btrfs还处于开发中，还处于实验阶段。安装程序默认没有提供创建Btrfs功能。如果你想在硬盘上创建Btrfs分区，必须在引导安装时添加 `• icantbelieveitsnotbtr` 命令选项。具体查看 [9](#) 的介绍



### Btrfs还是实验性的

Fedora 11 包括 Btrfs,作为技术预览提供给用户进行体验。您不应该为重要数据和系统分区使用Btrfs文件系统。

**ext2** — ext2 文件系统支持标准的 Unix 文件类型（常规文件、目录、符号链接等等）。它支持使用长达 255 个字符的长文件名。

**ext3** — ext3 文件系统基于 ext2 文件系统，它有一个主要优点 — 日志（journaling）。使用日志的文件系统减少了崩溃后恢复文件系统所花费的时间，因为它无需运行 `fsck` 文件系统。

**ext4** — The ext4 file system is based on the ext3 file system and features a number of improvements. These include support for larger file systems and larger files, faster and more efficient allocation of disk space, no limit on the number of subdirectories within a directory, faster file system checking, and more robust journalling. The ext4 file system is selected by default and is highly recommended.

**物理卷（LVM）** — 创建一个或多个物理卷（LVM）分区后允许您创建一个 LVM 逻辑卷。LVM 可以在使用物理磁盘的时候提高性能。

**软RAID** —；创建两个以上的软RAID分区后可创建RAID设备。

**交换分区** —；交换分区用于支持虚拟内存。也就是说，如果内存不够存放数据时，这些数据就会被写到交换分区上。

**vfat** — VFAT 文件系统是一个 Linux 文件系统，它与 Microsoft Windows 的 FAT 文件系统的长文件名兼容。这个文件必须在 Itanium 系统的 `/boot/efi` 分区上使用。

## 7.21.6. 编辑分区

要编辑一个分区，选择「编辑」按钮或双击该分区。



### Note

如果分区在你的硬盘中已经存在，你将只能改变分区的挂载点。如果你想做其它改变，你将需要删除该分区然后再重新创建它。

## 7.21.7. 删除分区

要删除分区，在「分区」部分将之突出显示，然后点击「删除」按钮。你需要在提示时确认此项删除。

要获得 x86、AMD64 和 Intel® 64 系统的进一步安装说明，请跳至 [7.22 “x86 AMD64 Intel 64 Boot Loader”](#)。

## 7.22. x86、AMD64 和 Intel® 64 系统的引导装载程序（Boot Loader）的配置

如果不使用引导介质来引导你的系统，你通常需要安装一个引导装载程序。引导装载程序是计算机启动时所运行的第一个软件，它的责任是载入操作系统内核软件并把控制权转交给它。然后，内核再初始化操作系统的其他部分。



### Installing in text mode

If you install Fedora in text mode, the installer configures the bootloader automatically and you cannot customize bootloader settings during the installation process.

GRUB（GRand Unified Bootloader）是一个默认安装的功能强大的引导装载程序。GRUB 能够通过连锁载入（chain-loading）来装载多种免费和专有操作系统（连锁载入是通过载入另一个引导装载程序来载入 DOS 或 Windows 之类不被支持的操作系统的机制）。



### The GRUB boot menu

The GRUB menu defaults to being hidden, except on dual-boot systems. To show the GRUB menu during system boot, press and hold the Shift key before the kernel is loaded. (Any other key works as well but the Shift key is the safest to use.)



图 7.25. 引导装载程序配置



If there are no other operating systems on your computer, or you are completely removing any other operating systems the installation program will install GRUB as your boot loader without any intervention. In that case you may continue on to [7.23 “Package Group Selection”](#).

您的系统可能已经安装了一个引导加载程序。一个操作系统会安装自己首选的引导加载程序，或者您安装了第三方的引导加载程序。如果您的引导加载程序无法识别 Linux 分区，可能就无法引导 Fedora。使用 GRUB 作为您的引导加载程序，可以引导 Linux 和大多数其他操作系统。按照这章的描述来安装 GRUB。



### Installing GRUB

如果您安装 GRUB，它将覆盖已有的引导加载程序。

By default, the installation program installs GRUB in the master boot record or MBR, of the device for the root file system. To decline installation of a new boot loader, unselect Install boot loader on /dev/sda.



### Warning

如果由于某种原因你选择不安装 GRUB，你将无法直接引导系统，你必须得使用另一种引导方法（如商用引导装载程序）。只有当你确定另有引导系统的方法时才使用该选项！

如果您已经安装了其他操作系统，Fedora 尝试自动检测并配置 GRUB 来引导它们。如果 GRUB 没有检测到它们的话，您可以手动配置任何其他的操作系统。

要添加，删除或改变探测到的操作系统设置，使用该选项。

#### Add

选择 **增加** 按钮来在 GRUB 中包括其他的操作系统。

在下拉菜单中，选择包含可启动的操作系统的分区，然后为这个项目命名。GRUB 将在启动菜单中显示这个名称。

#### Edit

要修改 GRUB 启动管理器的一个项目，选择它然后按下 **编辑** 按钮。

#### Delete

要从 GRUB 启动菜单中删除一个项目，选择它然后按下界面中的 **删除** 按钮。

在你想要的引导分区旁边选择「默认」来选择你默认的可引导操作系统。你选定了默认引导映像后，安装才会继续。



### Note

「标签」列中列出的信息是你在引导所需操作系统时必须要在非图形化引导装载程序的引导提示下输入的信息。

一旦你已载入 GRUB 引导屏幕，使用箭头键来选择引导标签，键入 e 来编辑。你将会看到所选引导标签配置文件中的项目列表。

在别人可以亲身访问你的服务器的情况下，引导装载程序密码为你提供了一种安全机制。

如果你打算安装引导装载程序，你应该创建一个密码来保护你的系统。若没有引导装载程序密码，能够进入你的系统的用户将可以向内核传递选项，从而减弱你的系统安全性；若使用了引导装载程序密码，用户必须先输入密码才能选择非标准的引导选项。然而，能够从物理角度使用你的机器的用户仍可以从软盘、光盘、或 USB 介质（若 BIOS 支持）引导。包括引导装载程序密码的保安计划还应该解决其它引导方法带来的安全问题。



### 不使用 GRUB 密码

如果您的系统只有一个可被信任的操作员，或控制台的访问在物理上很安全，您可能不需要 GRUB 密码。然而，如果一个不可信的人能物理访问您的电脑键盘和显示器。他将能够重新引导系统然后访问 GRUB。这时密码将很有用。

如果你选择要使用引导装载程序密码来增进你的系统安全性，请确定选择标为「使用引导装载程序密码」的复选框。

一旦选毕，输入密码并确认。

GRUB 将密码以加密形式存储，因此 被读取或非法取得。如果您忘记了引导密码，就按照通常的方式启动，然后修改 `/boot/grub/grub.conf` 中的密码一项。如果您无法启动，那么可以用第一张 Fedora 安装光盘以 "rescue" 模式来进入系统，重置 GRUB 密码。

如果您一定要修改 GRUB 密码，使用 `grub-md5-crypt` 实用工具。关于如何使用这个工具，可以在终端下用命令 `man grub-md5-crypt` 来查看手册。

要配置更高级的引导装载程序选项，如改变磁盘顺序或往内核传入参数，在点击「下一步」之前，你要确保已经选中了「配置高级引导装载程序选项」。

## 7.22.1. 高级引导装载程序配置

现在，你已选定了要安装的引导装载程序，你还可以决定要在哪里安装引导装载程序。你可以在下面两个位置之一安装引导装载程序：

The master boot record (MBR) — This is the recommended place to install a boot loader, unless the MBR already starts another operating system loader, such as System Commander. The MBR is a special area on your hard drive that is automatically loaded by your computer's BIOS, and is the earliest point at which the boot loader can take control of the boot process. If you install it in the MBR, when your machine boots, GRUB presents a boot prompt. You can then boot Fedora or any other operating system that you have configured the boot loader to boot.

The first sector of your boot partition — This is recommended if you are already using another boot loader on your system. In this case, your other boot loader takes control first. You can then configure that boot loader to start GRUB, which then boots Fedora.



### GRUB 作为二级引导程序

如果安装 GRUB 为二级引导加载程序，当从新内核引导或安装时您必须重新配置主引导加载程序。像 Microsoft Windows 这样的一个操作系统的内核引导的风格是不同的。因此许多用户在双系统中让 GRUB 成为主引导加载程序。



图 7.26. 引导装载程序安装

### Note

如果你有一个 RAID 卡，请注意某些 BIOS 不支持从 RAID 卡引导。在这类情况下，引导装载程序 被安装在 RAID 阵列的 MBR 上。引导装载程序应该被安装在创建 /boot 分区所在的同一驱动器上的 MBR。

If your system only uses Fedora, you should choose the MBR.

如果你想重新排列驱动器顺序，或者你的 BIOS 所返回的驱动器顺序不正确，点击「改变驱动器顺序」按钮。如果你有多个 SCSI 适配器或者兼有 SCSI 和 IDE 适配器，并想从 SCSI 设备中引导，改变驱动器顺序可能会发挥作用。

### Note

在为你的硬盘驱动器分区时，请注意某些较老的系统 BIOS 无法进入硬盘里前 1024 柱面以外的区域。如果情况如此，在你的硬盘的前 1024 柱面上为 /boot Linux 保留足够空间以便引导 Linux。其它 Linux 分区可以位于柱面 1024 之后。

在 parted 中，1024 柱面相当于 528MB。详情请参阅：

<http://www.pcguides.com/ref/hdd/bios/sizeMB504-c.html>

## 7.22.2. Rescue Mode

Rescue mode provides the ability to boot a small Fedora environment entirely from boot media or some other boot method instead of the system's hard drive. There may be times when you are unable to get Fedora running completely enough to access files on your system's hard drive. Using rescue mode, you can access the files stored on your system's hard drive, even if you cannot actually run Fedora from that hard drive. If you need to use rescue mode, try the following method:

Using the CD-ROM to boot an x86, AMD64, or Intel® 64 system, type `linux rescue` at the installation boot prompt.

## 7.22.3. 其它可选的引导装载程序

GRUB is the default bootloader for Fedora, but is not the only choice. A variety of open-source and proprietary alternatives to GRUB are available to load Fedora, including LILO, SYSLINUX, Acronis Disk Director Suite, and Apple Boot Camp.

## 7.23. Package Group Selection

你已经完成了多数安装选择，现在就可以确认要为系统选择默认软件包还是定制软件包。

The Package Installation Defaults screen appears and details the default package set for your Fedora installation. This screen varies depending on the version of Fedora you are installing.



### Installing from a Live Image

If you install from a Fedora Live image, you cannot make package selections. This installation method transfers a copy of the Live image rather than installing packages from a repository. To change the package selection, complete the installation, then use the Add/Remove Software application to make desired changes.



### Installing in text mode

If you install Fedora in text mode, you cannot make package selections. The installer automatically selects packages only from the base and core groups. These packages are sufficient to ensure that the system is operational at the end of the installation process, ready to install updates and new packages. To change the package selection, complete the installation, then use the Add/Remove Software application to make desired changes.



图 7.27. Package Group Selection

By default, the Fedora installation process loads a selection of software that is suitable for a desktop system. To include or remove software for common tasks, select the relevant items from the list:

#### Office and Productivity

This option provides the OpenOffice.org productivity suite, the Planner project management application, graphical tools such as the GIMP, and multimedia applications.

#### Software Development

This option provides the necessary tools to compile software on your Fedora system.

#### Web server

This option provides the Apache Web server.

如果你选择接受当前的软件包列表，将跳到 [7.24](#) “ ”。

要选择组件，点击它旁边的复选框（参阅 [7.27 “Package Group Selection”](#)）。

要进一步定制你的软件包，选择屏幕上的「现在定制」选项。点击「下一步」会把你带到「选择软件包组」屏幕。

### 7.23.1. Installing from Additional Repositories

You can define additional *repositories* to increase the software available to your system during installation. A repository is a network location that stores software packages along with *metadata* that describes them. Many of the software packages used in Fedora require other software to be installed. The installer uses the metadata to ensure that these requirements are met for every piece of software you select for installation.

The basic options are:

The Installation Repo repository is automatically selected for you. This represents the collection of software available on your installation CD or DVD.


The Fedora 11 - i386 repository contains the complete collection of software that was released as Fedora 11, with the various pieces of software in their versions that were current at the time of release. If you are installing from the Fedora 11 DVD or *set* of CDs, this option does not offer you anything extra. However, if you are installing from a Fedora Live CD, this option provides access to far more software than is included on the disk. Note that the computer must have access to the internet to use this option.

The Fedora 11 - i386 - Updates repository contains the complete collection of software that was released as Fedora 11, with the various pieces of software in their most current stable versions. This option not only installs the software that you select, but makes sure that it is fully updated as well. Note that the computer must have access to the internet to use this option.

图 7.28. Adding a software repository

To include software from *repositories* other than the Fedora package collection, select Add additional software repositories. You may provide the location of a repository of third-party software. Depending on the configuration of that repository, you may be able to select non-Fedora software during installation.


To edit an existing software repository location, select the repository in the list and then select Modify repository.



### Network Access Required

If you change the repository information during a non-network installation, such as from a Fedora DVD, the installer prompts you for network configuration information.

If you select Add additional software repositories, the Edit repository dialog appears. Provide a Repository name and the Repository URL for its location.



### Fedora Software Mirrors

To find a Fedora software mirror near you, refer to <http://fedoraproject.org/wiki/Mirrors>.

Once you have located a mirror, to determine the URL to use, find the directory on the mirror that *contains* a directory named repodata. For instance, the "Everything" repository for Fedora is typically located in a directory tree releases/11/Everything/*arch*/os, where *arch* is a system architecture name.

Once you provide information for an additional repository, the installer reads the package metadata over the network. Software that is specially marked is then included in the package group selection system. See [7.23.2 "Customizing the Software Selection"](#) for more information on selecting packages.

### Backtracking Removes Repository Metadata

If you choose Back from the package selection screen, any extra repository data you may have entered is lost. This allows you to effectively cancel extra repositories. Currently there is no way to cancel only a single repository once entered.

## 7.23.2. Customizing the Software Selection

Select Customize now to specify the software packages for your final system in more detail. This option causes the installation process to display an additional customization screen when you select Next.

### Installing Support for Additional Languages

Select Customize now to install support for additional languages. Refer to [7.23.2.2 “Additional Language Support”](#) for more information on configuring language support.

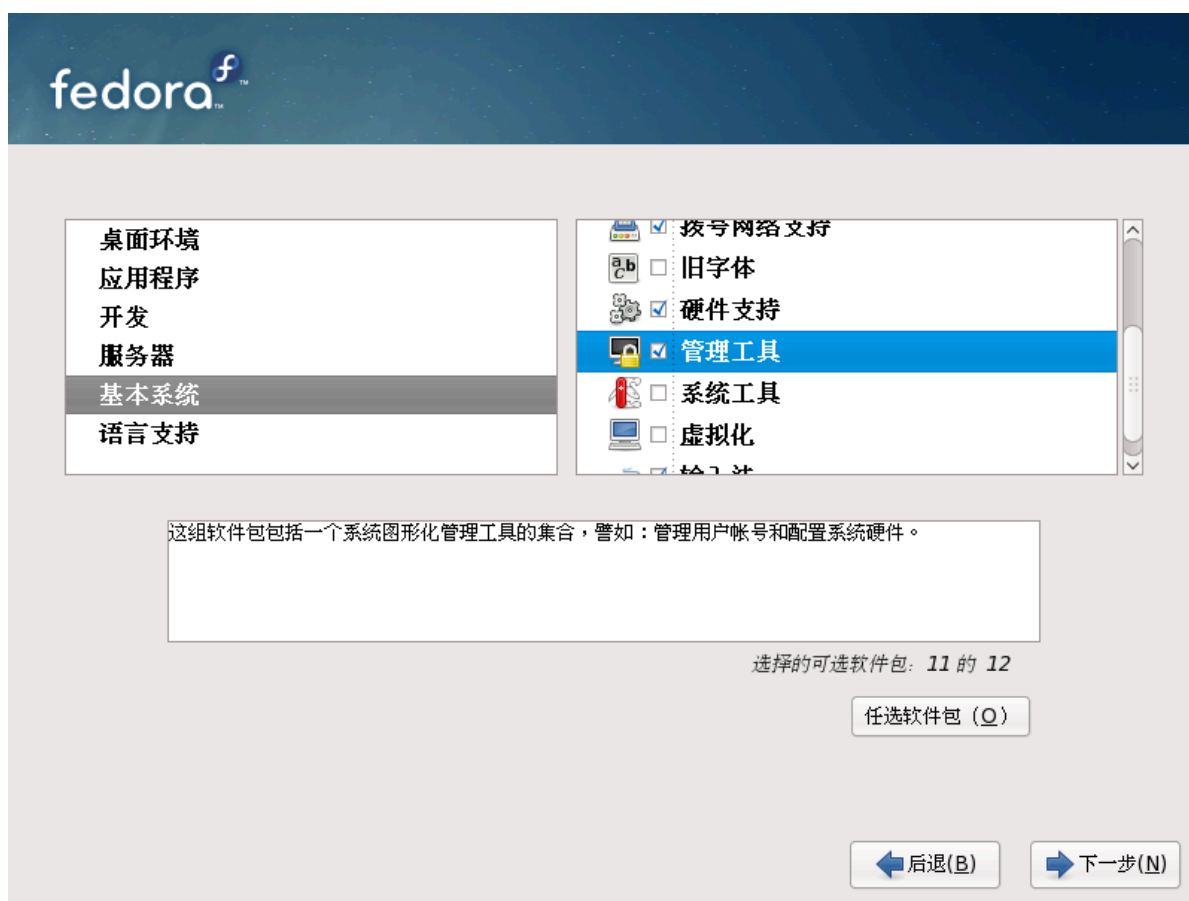


图 7.29. 软件包组细节

Fedora divides the included software into *package groups*. For ease of use, the package selection screen displays these groups as categories.

你可以选择根据功能归类的软件包组（譬如，「X 窗口系统」、「编辑器」）、单个软件包或者两者的组合。

To view the package groups for a category, select the category from the list on the left. The list on the right displays the package groups for the currently selected category.

To specify a package group for installation, select the check box next to the group. The box at the bottom of the screen displays the details of the package group that is currently highlighted. *None* of the packages from a group will be installed unless the check box for that group is selected.

If you select a package group, Fedora automatically installs the base and mandatory packages for that group. To change which optional packages within a selected group will be installed, select the Optional Packages button under the description of the group. Then use the check box next to an individual package name to change its selection.

After you choose the desired packages, select Next to proceed. Fedora checks your selection, and automatically adds any extra packages required to use the software you select. When you have finished selecting packages, click Close to save your optional package selections and return to the main package selection screen.

### 7.23.2.1. Changing Your Mind

The packages that you select are not permanent. After you boot your system, use the Add/Remove Software tool to either install new software or remove installed packages. To run this tool, from the main menu, select System → Administration → Add/Remove Software. The Fedora software management system downloads the latest packages from network servers, rather than using those on the installation discs.

### 7.23.2.2. Additional Language Support

Your Fedora system automatically supports the language that you selected at the start of the installation process. To include support for additional languages, select the package group for those languages from the Languages category.

### 7.23.2.3. Core Network Services

All Fedora installations include the following network services:

- centralized logging through syslog
- email through SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol)
- network file sharing through NFS (Network File System)
- remote access through SSH (Secure SHell)
- resource advertising through mDNS (multicast DNS)

The default installation also provides:

- network file transfer through HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol)
- printing through CUPS (Common UNIX Printing System)
- remote desktop access through VNC (Virtual Network Computing)

Some automated processes on your Fedora system use the email service to send reports and messages to the system administrator. By default, the email, logging, and printing services do not accept connections from other systems. Fedora installs the NFS sharing, HTTP, and VNC components without enabling those services.



You may configure your Fedora system after installation to offer email, file sharing, logging, printing and remote desktop access services. The SSH service is enabled by default. You may use NFS to access files on other systems without enabling the NFS sharing service.

## 7.24. 准备安装

### 7.24.1. 准备安装

A screen preparing you for the installation of Fedora now appears.

当你重新引导系统后，一份完整的安装日志可在 `/root/install.log` 中找到，以备今后参考。


要取消安装进程，按你的计算机的重设按钮，或者使用 `Control+Alt+Delete` 组合键来重启你的机器。

## 7.25. Installing Packages

到了这一步，在所有软件包被安装之前你将不必进行任何操作。安装的快慢要依据你所选择的软件包数量和你的计算机的速度而定。

Fedora reports the installation progress on the screen as it writes the selected packages to your system. Network and DVD installations require no further action. If you are using CDs to install, Fedora prompts you to change discs periodically. After you insert a disc, select OK to resume the installation.

After installation completes, select Reboot to restart your computer. Fedora ejects any loaded discs before the computer reboots.



**Installing from a Live Image**

If you install from a Fedora Live image, no reboot prompt appears. You may continue to use the Live image as desired, and reboot the system at any time to enjoy the newly installed Fedora system.

## 7.26. 安装完成

Congratulations! Your Fedora installation is now complete!

安装程序会提示你做好重新引导系统的准备。如果安装介质（磁盘驱动器内的磁盘或光盘驱动器内的光盘）在重新引导时没有被自动弹出，请记得取出它们。



# 在 Intel 或 AMD 系统上进行安装的故障解除

该附录讨论一些常见的安装问题以及它们的解决办法。

## 8.1. You are unable to boot Fedora

### 8.1.1. 无法使用 RAID 卡来引导

如果你无法执行安装并且无法正确引导系统，你可能需要重新安装并且用不同的方式分区。

某些 BIOS 不支持从 RAID 卡引导。在安装结束部分，一个基于文本的屏幕会显示引导装载程序提示（例如：GRUB:）以及一个闪动的光标。如果情况如此，你将会需要重新为你的系统分区。

不论你选择的是自动分区还是手工分区，你将会需要在 RAID 阵列之外，如一个分开的硬盘驱动器上，安装 /boot 分区。对于有问题的 RAID 卡，你必须有一个用于创建分区的内部硬盘驱动器。

你必须还要在 RAID 阵列外的一个驱动器的 MBR 上安装你优选的引导装载程序（GRUB 或 LILO）。引导装载程序应该安装在包含 /boot/ 分区的同一驱动器上。

当做完这些改变后，你应该可以结束安装并使用合适的方法引导系统。

### 8.1.2. 系统显示了信号 11 错误

一个信号 11 错误（通常被称为 `segfault`）通常意味着程序访问了没有分配给它的一段内存。如果您在安装的过程中遇到了一个致命的信号 11 错误，这可能是由于所安装的某个软件中存在错误，或者是硬件故障。

If you receive a fatal signal 11 error during your installation, it is probably due to a hardware error in memory on your system's bus. Like other operating systems, Fedora places its own demands on your system's hardware. Some of this hardware may not be able to meet those demands, even if they work properly under another OS.

Ensure that you have the latest installation updates and images. Review the online errata to see if newer versions are available. If the latest images still fail, it may be due to a problem with your hardware. Commonly, these errors are in your memory or CPU-cache. A possible solution for this error is turning off the CPU-cache in the BIOS, if your system supports this. You could also try to swap your memory around in the motherboard slots to check if the problem is either slot or memory related.

Another option is to perform a media check on your installation CD-ROMs. Anaconda, the installation program, has the ability to test the integrity of the installation media. It works with the CD, DVD, hard drive ISO, and NFS ISO installation methods. Red Hat recommends that you test all installation media before starting the installation process, and before reporting any installation-related bugs (many of the bugs reported are actually due to improperly-burned CDs). To use this test, type the following command at the boot: prompt:

```
linux mediacheck
```

关于信号 11 错误的详情，请参阅：

<http://www.bitwizard.nl/sig11/>

## 8.2. 安装起始部分的问题

### 8.2.1. Problems with Booting into the Graphical Installation

There are some video cards that have trouble booting into the graphical installation program. If the installation program does not run using its default settings, it tries to run in a lower resolution mode. If that still fails, the installation program attempts to run in text mode.

One possible solution is to try using the `resolution= boot` option. This option may be most helpful for laptop users. Another solution to try is the `driver=` option to specify the driver that should be loaded for your video card. If this works, it should be reported as a bug as the installer has failed to autodetect your videocard. Refer to [9](#) for more information on boot options.



#### Note

To disable frame buffer support and allow the installation program to run in text mode, try using the `nofb boot` option. This command may be necessary for accessibility with some screen reading hardware.

## 8.3. 安装过程中的问题

### 8.3.1. No devices found to install Fedora Error Message

If you receive an error message stating No devices found to install Fedora, there is probably a SCSI controller that is not being recognized by the installation program.

查看硬件厂商的网站来查找是否有可以解决这个问题的驱动磁盘映像。更多关于驱动磁盘的信息，请参阅 [5](#) [Intel](#) [AMD](#)。

You can also refer to the LinuxQuestions.org Hardware Compatibility List, available online at:

<http://www.linuxquestions.org/hcl/index.php>

### 8.3.2. Saving traceback messages without removeable media

If you receive a traceback error message during installation, you can usually save it to removeable media, for example a USB flash drive or a floppy disk.

If you do not have removeable media available on your system, you can scp the error message to a remote system.

当回溯追踪对话框出现时，回溯追踪消息会被自动写入一个叫做 `/tmp/anacdump.txt` 的文件。一旦这个对话框出现，键入 `Ctrl+Alt+F2` 来切换到一个新的 tty（虚拟控制台），然后使用 `scp` 命令把消息写入一个已知运行的远程系统上的 `/tmp/anacdump.txt` 文件中。

### 8.3.3. Trouble with Partition Tables

如果您在「磁盘分区设置」（[7.18](#) “*Disk Partitioning Setup*”）阶段后遇到了一个与以下类似的错误：

无法读 hda 设备上的分区表。要创建新分区，分区表必须被初始化，这将破坏这个设备上的所有数据。

you may not have a partition table on that drive or the partition table on the drive may not be recognizable by the partitioning software used in the installation program.

使用过 EZ-BIOS 之类程序的用户遇到过类似的问题，这个问题导致了无法被恢复的数据丢失（假定安装前没有进行备份）。

No matter what type of installation you are performing, backups of the existing data on your systems should always be made.

### 8.3.4. 使用剩余空间

你创建了一个 swap 和一个 / (根) 分区，而且选择了要让根分区使用剩余空间，但是它并不一定会填满整个硬盘驱动器。

如果你的硬盘大于 1024 个柱面，你必须创建一个 /boot 分区才能使 / (根) 分区使用你的硬盘上的所有剩余空间。

### 8.3.5. 其它分区问题

If you create partitions manually, but cannot move to the next screen, you probably have not created all the partitions necessary for installation to proceed.

You must have the following partitions as a bare minimum:

A / (root) partition

A <swap> partition of type swap



#### Note

When defining a partition's type as swap, do not assign it a mount point. Anaconda automatically assigns the mount point for you.

### 8.3.6. 看到 Python 错误

During some upgrades or installations of Fedora, the installation program (also known as anaconda) may fail with a Python or traceback error. This error may occur after the selection of individual packages or while trying to save the upgrade log in the /tmp/directory. The error may look similar to:

```
Traceback (innermost last):
File "/var/tmp/anaconda-7.1//usr/lib/anaconda/iw/progress_gui.py", line 20, in run
rc = self.todo.doInstall ()
File "/var/tmp/anaconda-7.1//usr/lib/anaconda/todo.py", line 1468, in doInstall
self.fstab.savePartitions ()
File "fstab.py", line 221, in savePartitions
sys.exit(0)
SystemExit: 0
Local variables in innermost frame:
self: <fstab.GuiFstab instance at 8446fe0>
```

```
sys: <module 'sys' (built-in)>
ToDo object: (itodo ToDo p1 (dp2 S'method' p3 (iimage CdromInstallMethod
p4 (dp5 S'progressWindow' p6 <failed>
```

在会发生这个错误的系统中，到 `/tmp/` 的链接可能是与其它位置的符号链接，或者 `/tmp/` 自从创建以来已被改变。这些符号链接或被改变的链接在安装进程中无效，因此安装程序无法在其中写入信息而失败。

If you experience such an error, first try to download any available updates for anaconda. Updates for anaconda and instructions for using them can be found at:

<http://fedoraproject.org/wiki/Anaconda/Updates>

anaconda 的网站也是一个有用的参考，它位于：

<http://fedoraproject.org/wiki/Anaconda>

你还可以搜寻与这一问题有关的错误报告。要搜寻红帽的错误跟踪系统，请访问：

<http://bugzilla.redhat.com/bugzilla/>

## 8.4. 安装后的问题

### 8.4.1. 在 x86 系统的 GRUB 图形化屏幕中遇到问题

如果在使用 GRUB 时遇到问题，你可能需要禁用图形化引导屏幕。你可以用根用户身份编辑 `/boot/grub/grub.conf` 文件，然后重新引导系统来达到这一目的。

编辑方法是，把 `grub.conf` 文件中开头为 `splashimage` 的行变为注释。要将某一行变为注释，在这一行的起首插入 `#` 字符。

按 `Enter` 键来退出编辑模式。

回到引导装载程序屏幕后，键入 `b` 来引导系统。

当你重新引导后，`grub.conf` 文件将会被重读，你所做的改变就会生效。

你可以重新启用图形化引导屏幕，方法是在 `grub.conf` 文件中不注释掉（或添加）以上提到的那一行。

### 8.4.2. 引导入图形环境

If you have installed the X Window System but are not seeing a graphical desktop environment once you log into your system, you can start the X Window System graphical interface using the command `startx`.

输入了该命令后，按 `Enter` 键，图形化界面就会被显示。

不过请注意，这只在这一次中有效，并不会改变未来的登录进程。

要设置您的系统从而使您能够使用图形化屏幕登录，您必须编辑 `/etc/inittab` 这个文件，只需改变运行级别部分中的一个数字即可。编辑完毕后，重新引导计算机，您下次登录时就会看到图形化登录提示。

打开 shell 提示。如果您登录的是您的用户账号，键入 `su` 命令来变成根用户身份。

现在，键入 `gedit /etc/inittab` 来使用 `gedit` 编辑这个文件。`/etc/inittab` 文件就会打开。在第一个屏幕上，您会看到类似以下的部分：

```
# Default runlevel. The runlevels used are:
# 0 - halt (Do NOT set initdefault to this)
# 1 - Single user mode
# 2 - Multiuser, without NFS (The same as 3, if you do not have networking)
# 3 - Full multiuser mode
# 4 - unused
# 5 - X11
# 6 - reboot (Do NOT set initdefault to this)
# id:3:initdefault:
```

要把登录从控制台改为图形化，您需要把 `id:3:initdefault:` 这一行中的数字从 3 改为 5。



### Warning

请 把默认的运行级别数字从 3 改为 5。

你改后的那一行应该类似：

```
id:5:initdefault:
```

当您对所做改变满意后，使用 `Ctrl+Q` 键组合来保存并退出该文件。您会看到一条消息询问您是否要保存所做改变。点击「保存」。

在你重新引导系统后再次登录时，你就会看到图形化登录提示。

### 8.4.3. 引导 X 窗口系统 (GUI) 的问题

如果你在启动 X (X 窗口系统) 时遇到问题，你可能在安装过程中没有安装它。

If you want X, you can either install the packages from the Fedora installation media or perform an upgrade.

如果你选择了升级，选择 X 窗口系统软件包组，然后在升级软件包选择过程中选择 GNOME、KDE、或两者皆选。

### 8.4.4. X 服务器崩溃和非根用户的问题

如果你在使用非根帐号登录时遇到 X 服务器崩溃问题，你的文件系统可能已满（或者缺乏可用的硬盘空间）。

要找出所遇到问题的症结所在，运行以下命令：

```
df -h
```

`df` 命令会帮助您诊断哪个分区已满。关于 `df` 命令及其选项（如本例中使用的 `-h` 选项）的更多信息，请参阅 `df` 的说明书页，方法是在 shell 提示下键入 `man df`。

关键指标是分区充满程度达到 100%，或者 90% 或 95%。/home/ 和 /tmp/ 分区有时会被用户文件很快填满。您可以删除些老文件来在分区里腾出些位置。腾出些空间后，试着再以普通用户身份运行 X 服务器。

### 8.4.5. 登录时的问题

If you did not create a user account in the firstboot screens, log in as root and use the password you assigned to root.

如果您没有记住根口令，您需要把系统引导为 linux single。

如果您使用的是基于 x86 的系统，GRUB 是您所安装的引导装载程序，载入了 GRUB 引导屏幕后，键入 e 来编辑。您会看到您所选定的引导标签的配置文件中的项目列表。

选择以 kernel 开始的行并输入 e 来编辑这个启动项。

在 kernel 行的结尾处，添加：

```
single
```

Press Enter to exit edit mode.

Once the boot loader screen has returned, type b to boot the system.

当您启动到单一用户模式并获得了 # 提示符后，您需要输入 passwd root，它允许您为根用户输入一个新口令。然后，您可以输入 shutdown -r now 来使用新的根用户口令重新启动这个系统。

如果您忘记了您的用户帐号口令，您必须变成根用户。要变成根用户，键入 su - ，在提示后输入根口令，然后键入 passwd <username>。这将会允许您为某一指定的用户帐号输入一个新口令。

If the graphical login screen does not appear, check your hardware for compatibility issues. Linuxquestions.org maintains a Hardware Compatibility List at:

```
http://www.linuxquestions.org/hcl/index.php
```

### 8.4.6. 你的内存不能够被识别吗？

有时，内核不能识别您的全部内存（RAM）。您可以用 cat /proc/meminfo 命令来校验。

查看一下所显示的数量是否与您所知的系统内存相同。如果不同，在 /boot/grub/grub.conf 文件中添加以下一行：

```
mem=xxM
```

把 xx 替换成你拥有的内存数量（以 MB 为单位）。

在 /boot/grub/grub.conf 文件中，以上的例子与下面相似：，

```
# NOTICE: You have a /boot partition. This means that
# all kernel paths are relative to /boot/
default=0
timeout=30
```



```
splashimage=(hd0,0)/grub/splash.xpm.gz
title Fedora (2.6.27.19-170.2.35.fc10.i686)
root (hd0,1)
kernel /vmlinuz-2.6.27.19-170.2.35.fc10.i686 ro root=UUID=04a07c13-e6bf-6d5a-b207-002689545705
mem=1024M
initrd /initrd-2.6.27.19-170.2.35.fc10.i686.img
```

重新引导后，`grub.conf` 文件中的改变将会反映在您的系统中。

当您已载入 GRUB 引导屏幕后，键入 `e` 来编辑。您所选定的引导标签的配置文件中的项目列表就会在您面前出现。

选择开头为 `kernel` 的行，然后键入 `e` 来编辑这一引导项目。

在 `kernel` 行的末尾，添加：

```
mem=xxM
```

这里的 `xx` 与你系统的内存数量相同。

Press Enter to exit edit mode.

Once the boot loader screen has returned, type `b` to boot the system.

Itanium users must enter boot commands with `elilo` followed by the boot command.

请记住将 `xx` 替换成您系统的内存数量。按 `Enter` 键来引导。

### 8.4.7. 您的打印机无法工作

如果您不能肯定该如何设置打印机，或者您在设置过程中遇到问题，请使用「打印机配置工具」。

在 `shell` 提示下键入 `system-config-printer` 命令来启动「打印机配置工具」。如果您不是根用户，它会提示您输入根密码后再继续。

### 8.4.8. 配置声卡遇到问题

如果由于某种原因，您听不到声音，但是您知道自己安装了一个声卡，您可以运行「声卡配置工具」（`system-config-soundcard`）。

To use the Sound Card Configuration Tool, choose Main Menu => System => Administration => Soundcard Detection in GNOME, or Main Menu => Computer => System Settings => Multimedia in KDE. A small text box pops up prompting you for your root password.

您还可以在 `shell` 提示下键入 `system-config-soundcard` 命令来启动「声卡配置工具」。如果您不是根用户，它会提示您输入根密码后再继续。

If the Sound Card Configuration Tool does not work (if the sample does not play and you still do not have audio sounds), it is likely that your sound card is not yet supported in Fedora.

### 8.4.9. 基于 Apachehttpd 的服务/Sendmail 在启动时挂起

如果您在系统启动时遇到基于 Apache httpd 的服务或 Sendmail 挂起的错误，请检查以下行包括在 `/etc/hosts` 文件中：

127.0.0.1 localhost.localdomain localhost

---

## 部分 III. Advanced installation options

This part of the *Fedora Installation Guide* covers more complex and uncommon methods of installing Fedora, including:

boot options.

installing without media.

installing through VNC.

using kickstart to automate the installation process.

---

---

---

## 启动选项

Fedora 安装系统包括一系列管理程序的功能和选项。要使用引导选项，在 `boot:` 提示符下输入 `linux option`。

如果您需要指定多个选项，用空格分开它们。例如：

```
linux 001 002 003
```



### Anaconda 启动选项

Anaconda 安装程序有许多的启动选项，绝大多数都列在 <http://fedoraproject.org/wiki/Anaconda/Options> 维基网页中。



### 内核启动选项

The <http://fedoraproject.org/wiki/KernelCommonProblems> page lists many common kernel boot options. The full list of kernel options is in the file `/usr/share/doc/kernel-doc-version/Documentation/kernel-parameters.txt`, which is installed with the `kernel-doc` package.



### Rescue Mode

Fedora 安装和 `rescue` 任何一个都能以 `rescue` 启动，或加载安装系统。关于救援光盘和救援模式的更多信息，请参考 [9.6.3](#) “救援模式”。

## 9.1. 在启动菜单下配置安装系统

您能用启动菜单来指定安装系统的许多设置，包括：

`language`

显示分辨率

界面类型

`Installation method`

网络设置

### 9.1.1. 指定语言

要设定安装过程和最终系统的语言，用 `lang` 选项指定语言的 ISO 编码。用 `keymap` 选项配置正确的键盘布局。

例如，ISO 编码 `el_GR` 和 `gr` 分别是希腊语和希腊键盘布局：

```
linux lang=el_GR keymap=gr
```

### 9.1.2. 配置界面

您也可以使用 `lowres` 选项强制使用可用的最低分辨率 (640x480) 安装系统。要指定显示分辨率，在引导选项输入 `resolution=setting`。例如，要设置显示分辨率为1024x768，输入：

```
linux resolution=1024x768
```

To run the installation process in text mode, enter:

```
linux text
```

To enable support for a serial console, enter `serial` as an additional option.

使用 `display=ip:0` 来转发远程显示。此命令中 `ip` 应替换为您想用来显示的计算机的IP地址。

在你希望进行显示的系统上执行 `xhost +remotehostname`，这里，`remotehostname` 是原来要进行显示的主机，使用命令 `xhost +remotehostname` 用来限制远程终端的访问，禁止未授权者进行远程访问。

### 9.1.3. 更新anaconda

您可使用比安装介质中更新的anaconda来安装Fedora。

The boot option

```
linux updates
```

presents you with a prompt that asks you for a floppy disk containing anaconda updates. You do not need to specify this option if you are performing a network installation and have already placed the updates image contents in `rhupdates/` on the server.

要从网络中加载anaconda更新，使用：

```
linux updates=
```

followed by the URL for the location where the updates are stored.

### 9.1.4. 指定安装方法

用 `askmethod` 选项来显示您能指定的安装方法和网络设置的附加菜单。您也能在boot:提示符下配置安装方法和网络设置。

要指定安装方法在boot:提示时，用`method`选项。关于支持的安装方法请参考 [9.1 “Installation methods”](#)。

Installation method	Option format
CD 或 DVD 驱动器	<code>method=<i>cdrom</i></code>

Installation method	Option format
Hard Drive	method= <i>hd://device/</i>
HTTP Server	method= <i>http://server.mydomain.com/directory/</i>
FTP Server	method= <i>ftp://server.mydomain.com/directory/</i>
NFS Server	method= <i>nfs:server.mydomain.com:/directory/</i>

表 9.1. Installation methods

### 9.1.5. 手动配置网络设置

默认情况下，安装系统用DHCP来自动获得正确的网络设置。要手动配置自己的网络设置，在 `Configure TCP/IP(配置 TCP/IP)` 屏幕，或 `boot:` 提示符下任选其一输入。在提示符下，您可以为安装系统指定 `ip` 地址，`netmask`，`gateway`，和 `dns` 服务器设置。如果您在 `boot:` 提示符下指定网络配置,这些设置将用在安装过程中，而 `Configure TCP/IP(配置 TCP/IP)` 屏幕不会出现。

这个例子是为一个用192.168.1.10作为IP地址的安装系统来配置网络设置:

```
linux ip=192.168.1.10 子网掩码=255.255.255.0 网关=192.168.1.1
dns=192.168.1.2,192.168.1.3
```



#### 配置安装系统

Use the Network Configuration screen to specify the network settings for the new system. Refer to [7.15.1 “Manual configuration”](#) for more information on configuring the network settings for the installed system.

## 9.2. 允许远程访问安装系统

You may access either graphical or text interfaces for the installation system from any other system. Access to a text mode display requires telnet, which is installed by default on Fedora systems. To remotely access the graphical display of an installation system, use client software that supports the VNC (Virtual Network Computing) display protocol. A number of providers offer VNC clients for Microsoft Windows and Mac OS, as well as UNIX-based systems.



#### 正在安装一个 VNC 客户端到 Fedora

Fedora includes vncviewer, the client provided by the developers of VNC. To obtain vncviewer, install the vnc package.

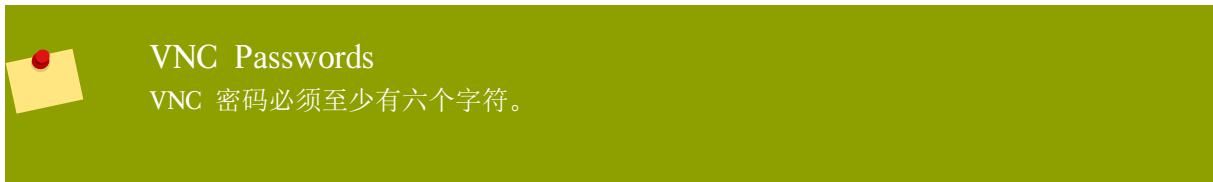
安装系统支持两种方式建立一个VNC 连接. 您可以开始安装，然后用其他系统的 VNC 客户端手动登陆图形显示。除此之外，您也可以配置安装系统运行 *listening mode*自动连接到网络上的VNC客户端。

### 9.2.1. 允许用 VNC 远程访问

To enable remote graphical access to the installation system, enter two options at the prompt:

```
linux vnc vncpassword=qwerty
```

vnc 选项允许 VNC 服务。vncpassword 选项设置一个远程访问密码。这个例子中显示上面的密码设置是 qwerty。



在下面这个屏幕指定安装系统的语言，键盘布局和网络设置。您可以通过一个VNC客户端访问图形界面。安装系统显示正确的VNC客户端连接设置：

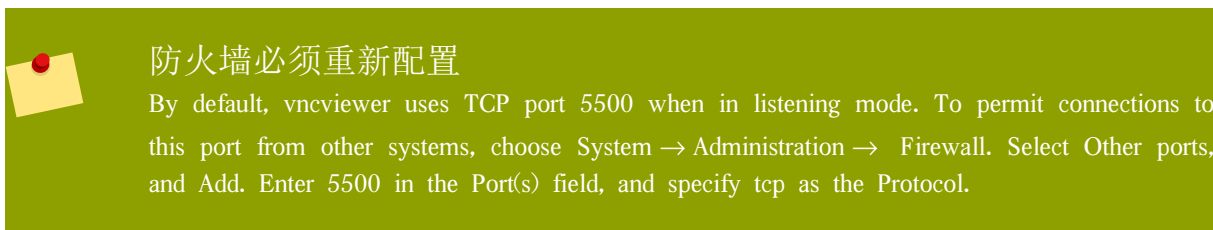
```
正在启动VNC...
VNC 服务器已开始运行
请连接computer.mydomain.com:1 开始安装...
开始图形化安装...
按 <回车> 打开shell
```

You may then login to the installation system with a VNC client. To run the vncviewer client on Fedora, choose Applications → Accessories → VNC Viewer, or type the command vncviewer in a terminal window. Enter the server and display number in the VNC Server dialog. For the example above, the VNC Server is computer.mydomain.com:1.

### 9.2.2. 连接安装系统到一个 VNC 监听程序

To have the installation system automatically connect to a VNC client, first start the client in listening mode. On Fedora systems, use the `-listen` option to run vncviewer as a listener. In a terminal window, enter the command:

```
vncviewer -listen
```



一旦客户端监听激活，开始安装系统并在boot: 提示符下设置 VNC 选项。除vnc和 vncpassword选项之外，用vncconnect选项来指定监听的客户端的名字或IP地址。要指定监听者的TCP端口，给系统名增加一个冒号和端口号。

例如，要在连接到系统 desktop.mydomain.com 的 5500 端口上的一个 VNC 客户端，在boot: 提示符下输入下面的：

```
linux vnc vncpassword=qwerty vncconnect=desktop.mydomain.com:5500
```

### 9.2.3. 允许用 Telnet 远程访问

To enable remote access to a text mode installation, use the telnet option at the boot: prompt:



```
linux text telnet
```

您可以用telnet实用程序连接到安装系统。telnet 命令需要安装系统的名字或IP地址：

```
telnet computer.mydomain.com
```



### Telnet不需要密码

要确认安装过程的安全，只在网络的访问受限制时用telnet安装系统

## 9.3. 在安装期间记录日志到远程主机

By default, the installation process sends log messages to the console as they are generated. You may specify that these messages go to a remote system that runs a *syslog* service.

要配置远程记录日志，增加 *syslog* 选项。指定记录系统的IP地址，和该系统日志服务的 UDP 端口号。默认情况下，*syslog* 服务在 UDP 端口514 上监听远程信息。

例如，要连接到一个系统192.168.1.20上的syslog服务，在boot: 提示符下输入下面的：

```
linux syslog=192.168.1.20:514
```

### 9.3.1. 配置服务器日志

Fedora uses rsyslog to provide a syslog service. The default configuration of rsyslog rejects messages from remote systems.



### 只允许安全网络的远程Syslog访问

The rsyslog configuration detailed below does not make use of any of the security measures available in rsyslog. Crackers may slow or crash systems that permit access to the logging service, by sending large quantities of false log messages. In addition, hostile users may intercept or falsify messages sent to the logging service over the network.

To configure a Fedora system to accept log messages from other systems on the network, edit the file `/etc/rsyslog.conf`. You must use root privileges to edit the file `/etc/rsyslog.conf`. Uncomment the following lines by removing the hash preceding them:

```
$ModLoad imudp.so
    $UDPServerRun 514
```

Restart the rsyslog service to apply the change:

```
su -c '/sbin/service rsyslog restart'
```

Enter the root password when prompted.



### 防火墙必须重新配置

By default, the syslog service listens on UDP port 514. To permit connections to this port from other systems, choose System → Administration → Firewall. Select Other ports, and Add. Enter 514 in the Port(s) field, and specify udp as the Protocol.

## 9.4. 使用 Kickstart 实现自动安装

A

*Kickstart* file specifies settings for an installation. Once the installation system boots, it can read a Kickstart file and carry out the installation process without any further input from a user.



### 每次安装产生一个 Kickstart 文件

Fedora 安装过程自动生成一个包括已安装系统设置的 Kickstart 文件。这个文件总是存储在 `/root/anaconda-ks.cfg`。您能用这个文件用同样的设置重复安装系统。或者修改拷贝来细化其他系统的设置。

Fedora includes a graphical application to create and modify Kickstart files by selecting the options that you require. Use the package `system-config-kickstart` to install this utility. To load the Fedora Kickstart editor, choose Applications → System Tools → Kickstart.

Kickstart文件以每行一个选项，纯文本的列出安装设置。这个格式让您用任何文本编辑器修改您的 Kickstart文件，并为您的系统写脚本或应用程序来生成一个定制的Kickstart文件。

要用Kickstart文件自动化安装，用ks 选项指定文件的名称和位置：

```
linux ks=location/kickstart-file.cfg
```

您可以把Kickstart文件放在任何一个移动存储，硬盘驱动器，或网络服务器上。关于支持的Kickstart来源请参考 [9.2 “Kickstart sources”](#)。

Kickstart source	Option format
CD 或 DVD 驱动器	ks= <code>cdrom://directory/ks.cfg</code>
Hard Drive	ks= <code>hd://device/directory/ks.cfg</code>
其它设备	ks= <code>file://device/directory/ks.cfg</code>
HTTP Server	ks= <code>http://server.mydomain.com/directory/ks.cfg</code>
FTP Server	ks= <code>ftp://server.mydomain.com/directory/ks.cfg</code>
NFS Server	ks= <code>nfs:server.mydomain.com:/directory/ks.cfg</code>

表 9.2. Kickstart sources

要从一个网络服务器上的脚本或应用中获得 Kickstart 文件，用 ks= 选项指定这个应用的 URL 链接。如果您增加 `kssendmac` 选项，请求也将发送 HTTP 报头到网络应用程序。您的应用程序能用这个报头来识别电脑。这行发送一个带报头的请求给应用程序`http://server.mydomain.com/kickstart.cgi`：

```
linux ks=http://server.mydomain.com/kickstart.cgi kssendmac
```


## 9.5. 增强的硬件支持

默认情况下，Fedora 尝试自动检测和配置您电脑上所有支持的部件。Fedora 用操作系统自带的软件 *drivers* 支持普遍使用的大部分硬件。要支持其他设备您需要在安装期间或稍后提供一个附加驱动。

### 9.5.1. 用驱动磁盘支持增加的硬件

安装系统能从磁盘，优盘，或网络服务器加载驱动来配置支持的一个新设备。在完成安装之后，取出任何驱动盘并保存以备稍后使用。

Hardware manufacturers may supply driver disks for Fedora with the device, or provide image files to prepare the disks. To obtain the latest drivers, download the correct file from the website of the manufacturer.



#### 驱动盘支持压缩文件

Driver disk images may be distributed as compressed archives, or zip files. For identification, the names of zip files include the extensions `.zip`, or `.tar.gz`. To extract the contents of a zipped file with a Fedora system, choose Applications → Accessories → Archive Manager.

要以一个镜像文件来格式化磁盘或优盘，用 `dd` 实用程序。例如，准备要用镜像文件 `drivers.img` 来做一个磁碟，在终端窗口输入这个命令：

```
dd if=drivers.img of=/dev/fd0
```

要在安装过程用一个驱动盘，在 `boot:` 提示符下用 `dd` 选项。

```
linux dd
```

注意 `dd` 选项与 `driverdisk` 选项通用。

当被提示，选择 `Yes` 来提供一个驱动磁盘时。选择 `Driver Disk Source` 文本屏幕上的列表里放有驱动盘的驱动器。

安装系统也能从在网络服务器上的磁盘镜像中读取驱动。关于支持的驱动盘镜像来源参考 [9.3 “Driver disk image sources”](#)。

Image source	Option format
选择一个驱动器和设备。	<code>dd</code>
HTTP Server	<code>dd=http://server.mydomain.com/directory/drivers.img</code>
FTP Server	<code>dd=ftp://server.mydomain.com/directory/drivers.img</code>
NFS Server	<code>dd=nfs:server.mydomain.com:/directory/drivers.img</code>

表 9.3. Driver disk image sources

### 9.5.2. 越过自动硬件检测

对于一些设备自动硬件配置的模块可能失败，或者导致不稳定。在这种情况下，您可能需要禁止这个设备类型的自动配置，然后在安装过程完成后采用附加步骤手动配置这个设备。

### 检查发行注记

参考发行注记获得特殊设备已知问题的信息。

要越过自动硬件检测，用下面的一个或更多选项：

Compatibility	Option
禁止所有硬件检测	noprobe
禁止图形，键盘，和鼠标检测	headless
禁用将键盘和鼠标信息传递给安装的第二步	nopass
为视频使用基本的 VESA 驱动	xdriver=vesa
安装过程中禁止shell访问虚拟终端2	noshell
禁用高级电源配置界面(ACPI)	acpi=off
禁用计算机检查例外(MCE)CPU自检。	nomce
在AMD64架构下禁用非均匀内存访问	numa-off
强制内核探测指定数额的内存，xxx以MB为单位。	mem=xxxm
仅为 IDE 和 SATA 驱动器启用 DMA	libata.dma=1
禁止 BIOS-assisted RAID	nodmraid
禁止火线设备检测	nofirewire
禁止并行端口检测	noparport
禁止 PC 卡 (PCMCIA) 设备检测	nopcmcia
禁止 USB 存储设备检测	nousbstorage
禁止所有 USB 设备检测	nousb
禁止所有网络设备探测	nonet

表 9.4. 硬件选项

### 附加屏幕

isa 选项让系统在安装过程的开始显示一个附加文本界面。用这个屏幕配置您电脑上的 ISA 设备。

### 重要

其它内核启动项对anaconda没有特别意义，并且对安装过程无影响。然而如果使用这些选项启动系统，anaconda会将它们保存到引导器配置文件中。

## 9.6. 用维修引导模式

### 9.6.1. 加载内存 (RAM) 检测模式

内存模块的错误可能导致系统突然停止响应或崩溃。有时，内存模块错误只会在特定的软件组合中出现。因此，您应当在第一次安装 Fedora 系统前测试内存，即使它以前可以运行其他操作系统。

Fedora includes the Memtest86 memory testing application. To boot your computer in memory testing mode, choose Memory test at the boot menu. The first test starts immediately. By default, Memtest86 carries out a total of ten tests.

要中止测试并重新引导您的计算机，随时可以输入 Esc。

## 9.6.2. 验证启动介质

在使用介质安装Fedora前，您可以测试基于ISO安装程序的完整性。这些程序包括CD，DVD及本地或NFS服务器上存储的ISO镜像。在安装前对ISO镜像进行验证有助于避免安装过程中出现的问题。

Fedora提供了三种检测ISO文件的方法：

在Fedora Live CD中选择验证和启动选项。要访问Live CD的启动菜单，请在启动画面出现的十秒内按任意键。

当从Fedora发行版CD或DVD启动时，在提示中选择OK来检测安装介质。

添加mediacheck选项启动Fedora。

## 9.6.3. 以修复模式引导您的计算机

You may boot a command-line Linux system from either a rescue disc or an installation disc, without installing Fedora on the computer. This enables you to use the utilities and functions of a running Linux system to modify or repair systems that are already installed on your computer.

救援光盘默认开始救援模式系统。要用安装光盘加载救援模式，从启动菜单中选择 `Rescue installed system`。

在下面的屏幕为修复系统

默认情况下，修复模式附加一个现有的操作系统到 `/mnt/sysimage/` 下来修复系统

## 9.6.4. 升级您的计算机

之前的启动选项`upgrade`，已由安装过程中的一个阶段代替，安装过程中会提示您升级或重新安装在您计算机上检测出的早期版本的Fedora。

但如果`/etc/fedora-release`文件内容被改过的话，安装程序可能无法正确的检测出旧版本的Fedora。启动选项`upgradeany`会跳过安装程序的这个检测并允许您在旧版本未被正确识别的情况下升级Fedora。



## 无介质的安装

这部分讨论如何在您的系统中在不生成附加物理介质的情况下安装 Fedora。另外，您可以使用现有 GRUB 引导装载程序启动安装程序。



### linux 需要的

这个过程假设您有使用 Fedora 或者其它相关 Linux 发行本以及 GRUB 的经验。它还假设您是一个有 Linux 使用经验的用户。

### 10.1. 搜索引导文件

要执行无介质安装或者 PXE 服务器安装，您的系统必须在本地安装两个文件，一个内核和一个初始 RAM 磁盘。

1. Download a Live image or DVD distribution, or to locate an installation mirror, visit <http://mirrors.fedoraproject.org/publiclist/Fedora/11/>.
2. 请使用以下方法之一定位 isolinux/ 文件夹：

如果您选择下载映像，请使用适当的桌面工具打开。如果您正在使用 Fedora，请双击该文件用 Archive Manager 打开它。打开 isolinux/ 文件夹。

If you chose not to download a whole image because you wish to install via the network, locate the desired release. In general, once you find a suitable mirror, browse to the releases/11/Fedora/**arch**/os/isolinux/ folder.



### 可用安装类型

如果您下载了一个映像，您可能接下来选择基于硬盘的安装或者网络安装。如果您只从一个镜像中下载选择的文件，您可能只能执行网络安装。

3. 从选择的源中将 vmlinuz 和 initrd.img 复制到 /boot/ 目录，将其重新命名为 vmlinuz-install 和 initrd.img-install。您必须有 root 权限以便可将文件写入 /boot/ 目录。

### 10.2. 编辑GRUB 配置

GRUB 引导装载程序使用配置文件 /boot/grub/grub.conf。要将 GRUB 配置为从新的文件引导，请在 /boot/grub/grub.conf 中添加一个指向它们的引导字段。

最小的引导字段类似如下：

```
title Installation
    root (hd0,0)
    kernel /vmlinuz-install
    initrd /initrd.img-install
```

您可能希望在引导字段 kernel 行最后添加选项。这些选项会在用户通常互动设定的 Anaconda 设置初步选项。可用安装程序引导选项列表请参考 [9](#)。

以下选项通常用于无介质安装中：

ip=

method=

lang=

keymap=

ksdevice=（如果安装需要 eth0 之外的接口）

vnc 和 vncpassword= 用于远程安装

完成后，在 `/boot/grub/grub.conf` 文件中更改 `default` 选项指向您新添加的第一个字段：

```
default 0
```

### 10.3. 引导安装

重启系统。GRUB 引导安装内核和 RAM 磁盘，包括您设置的所有选项。您现在可能要参考本指南的有关章节进行下一步安装。如果您选择使用 VNC 进行远程安装，请参考 [9.2 “ ”](#) 查看如何连接远程系统。



## 配置一个安装服务器



### 针对有经验的用户

这部分附录是针对有过使用Linux经验的用户的。对于新用户，推荐使用DVD发行版中的 Minimal Boot Media。



### Warning

The instructions in this appendix configures an automated install server. The default configuration includes destruction of all existing data on all disks for hosts that install using this method. This is often different from other network install server configurations which may provide for an interactive installation experience.

Fedora allows for installation over a network using the NFS, FTP, or HTTP protocols. A network installation can be started from a boot CD-ROM, a bootable flash memory drive, or by using the askmethod boot option with the Fedora CD #1 or DVD. Alternatively, if the system to be installed contains a network interface card (NIC) with Pre-Execution Environment (PXE) support, it can be configured to boot from files on another networked system rather than local media such as a CD-ROM.

For a PXE network installation, the client's NIC with PXE support sends out a broadcast request for DHCP information. The DHCP server provides the client with an IP address, other network information such as name server, the IP address or hostname of the tftp server (which provides the files necessary to start the installation program), and the location of the files on the tftp server. This is possible because of PXELINUX, which is part of the syslinux package.

In the past, administrators needed to perform a great deal of manual configuration to produce an installation server. However, if you have a Red Hat Enterprise Linux, CentOS, or Fedora server on your local network, you can use *cobbler* to perform these tasks. To configure a PXE server manually, see [11.5 “Manually configure a PXE server”](#).

这一部分向导里的工作，需要切换到root账户来进行。切换的命令是su -。另外一种方法是每次运行命令是在前面加上su -c，使命令行成为su -c **'command'**。

### 11.1. 配置cobbler

使用以下命令安装*cobbler*。

```
yum -y install cobbler
```

cobbler命令可以进行设置的自检并报告检测结过。运行以下命令以检测设置：


```
cobbler check
```

改变 `/var/lib/cobbler/settings` 文件的设置来反映服务器的 IP 地址信息。您至少需要修改 `server` 和 `next_server` 两项，虽然有时它们的 IP 地址相同

如果您还没有运行 DHCP 服务，您还要修改`manage_dhcp` 参数为 1。如果您已有一个运行的 DHCP 服务器，请根据 *syslinux* 软件包的内容进行配置。更多信息参考本地文件 `/usr/share/doc/syslinux-version/syslinux.doc` 和 `/usr/share/doc/syslinux-version/pxelinux.doc`。

## 11.2. 设置发布目录

从一个完整的 Fedora DVD 或 ISO 映像设置发布目录，采用这个步骤



### 网络位置

从网路源创建本地镜像请跳过这章，请参考 [11.3](#) “ ”

- 如果您使用 DVD 盘片或 ISO 映像，请创建一个目录作为挂载点

```
mkdir /mnt/dvd
```

要挂载一个 DVD 盘片，在输入下列命令：

```
mount -o context=system_u:object_r:httpd_sys_content_t:s0 /dev/dvd /mnt/dvd
```

要挂载一个DVD ISO 镜像，输入下列命令：

```
mount -ro loop,context=system_u:object_r:httpd_sys_content_t:s0 /path/to/image.iso /mnt/dvd
```

- 支持 NFS 安装，创建一个文件 `/etc/exports`，添加如下内容

```
/mnt/dvd *(ro,async)
```

输入下列命令，启动 NFS 服务器：

```
/sbin/service rpcbind start /sbin/service nfs start
```

- 要支持 HTTP 安装，如果 Apache 还没有安装则先用 yum 进行安装：

```
yum -y install httpd
```

在 Apache 的公共内容区创建挂载磁盘内容的连接：

```
ln -s /mnt/dvd /var/www/html/distro
```

## 11.3. 映射网络位置

如果没有创建发布目录所需的光盘或映像，您可以用 `cobbler` 来配置一个发布服务器。`cobbler`命令在导入过程中可以从网络获取发布目录

定位网络发布目录。具体位置可能是一个 FTP,HTTP 或 rsync 可以访问的网络主机。需注意 URI 的写法应为如下格式：

```
http://mirror.example.com/pub/fedora/linux/releases/11/Fedora/arch/os
```

```
ftp://mirror.example.com/pub/fedora/linux/releases/11/Fedora/arch/os
```

```
rsync://mirror.example.com/fedora/linux/releases/11/Fedora/arch/os
```

## 11.4. 导入发行版

如需通过多种方法访问发布目录，对不同方法采用不同名称执行 `cobbler import`。建议用安装方法作为名称的一部分，这样客户端的启动目录里会得到体现

1. 将 DVD 或 ISO 发布命令导入 `cobbler` 执行这个命令：

```
cobbler import --path=/mnt/dvd --name=distro_name
```

对 `distro_name` 来说，为这个发行本替换了一个有意义的名称。

要将一个本地或者远程网络发行本导入 `cobbler`，请运行这个命令。请使用您在 [11.3](#) “” 找到的 URI 替换 `network_URI`，并使用上述名称替换 `distro_name`。

```
cobbler import --mirror=network_URI --name=distro_name
```



### 导入一个源

`cobbler` 用如上命令导入发布目录时，会将所有文件拷贝到服务器上，这将会花一点时间。

如果您认为没有必要再创建一个本地的副本，客户端可以访问发布目录，可以用 `--available-as` 选项。

```
cobbler import --path=/mnt/dvd --name=distro_name --available-as=network_URI
cobbler import --mirror=network_URI --name=distro_name --available-as=network_URI
```

替换 `network_URI` 为恰当的网络发布路径。这个 URI 显示服务器如何提供发布目录给客户端。上面的例子假定您的 `cobbler` 服务器和您的客户端用相同的 URI 来访问镜像。如果不是可用 `--mirror` 来改变。如果您按照本章的内容设置则下面的例子将可以工作，假设服务器的地址为 192.168.1.1：

```
nfs://192.168.1.1:/mnt/dvd
```

```
http://192.168.1.1:/distro
```

如必要，请将 `192.168.1.1` 替换为您 `cobbler` 服务器的 IP 地址。

2. 运行 `cobbler sync` 提交。用 `netstat -lp` 命令检查 `cobbler` 服务器是否监听相应端口。



### 关于防火墙

根据服务器配置，您可能需要用 `system-config-securitylevel` 来设置防火墙以允许相应的网络服务：

67 或者 `bootps`，用于 DHCP/BOOTP 服务器

69 或者 `tftp`，用于提供 PXE 载入程序

80 or `http`，如果 `cobbler` 服务器提供 HTTP 安装服务

20 and 21 or ftp, 如果 cobbler 服务器提供 FTP 安装服务  
111 or sunrpc, 如果 cobbler 服务器提供 NFS 安装服务

## 11.5. Manually configure a PXE server

The following steps must be performed to prepare for a PXE installation:

1. Configure the network (NFS, FTP, HTTP) server to export the installation tree.
2. Configure the files on the tftp server necessary for PXE booting.
3. Configure which hosts are allowed to boot from the PXE configuration.
4. Start the tftp service.
5. Configure DHCP.
6. Boot the client, and start the installation.

### 11.5.1. Setting up the Network Server

First, configure an NFS, FTP, or HTTP server to export the entire installation tree for the version and variant of Fedora to be installed. Refer to [3.5 “ ”](#) for detailed instructions.

### 11.5.2. PXE Boot Configuration

The next step is to copy the files necessary to start the installation to the tftp server so they can be found when the client requests them. The tftp server is usually the same server as the network server exporting the installation tree.

To copy these files, run the Network Booting Tool on the NFS, FTP, or HTTP server. A separate PXE server is not necessary.

### 11.5.3. Adding PXE Hosts

After configuring the network server, the interface as shown in [11.1 “Add Hosts”](#) is displayed.

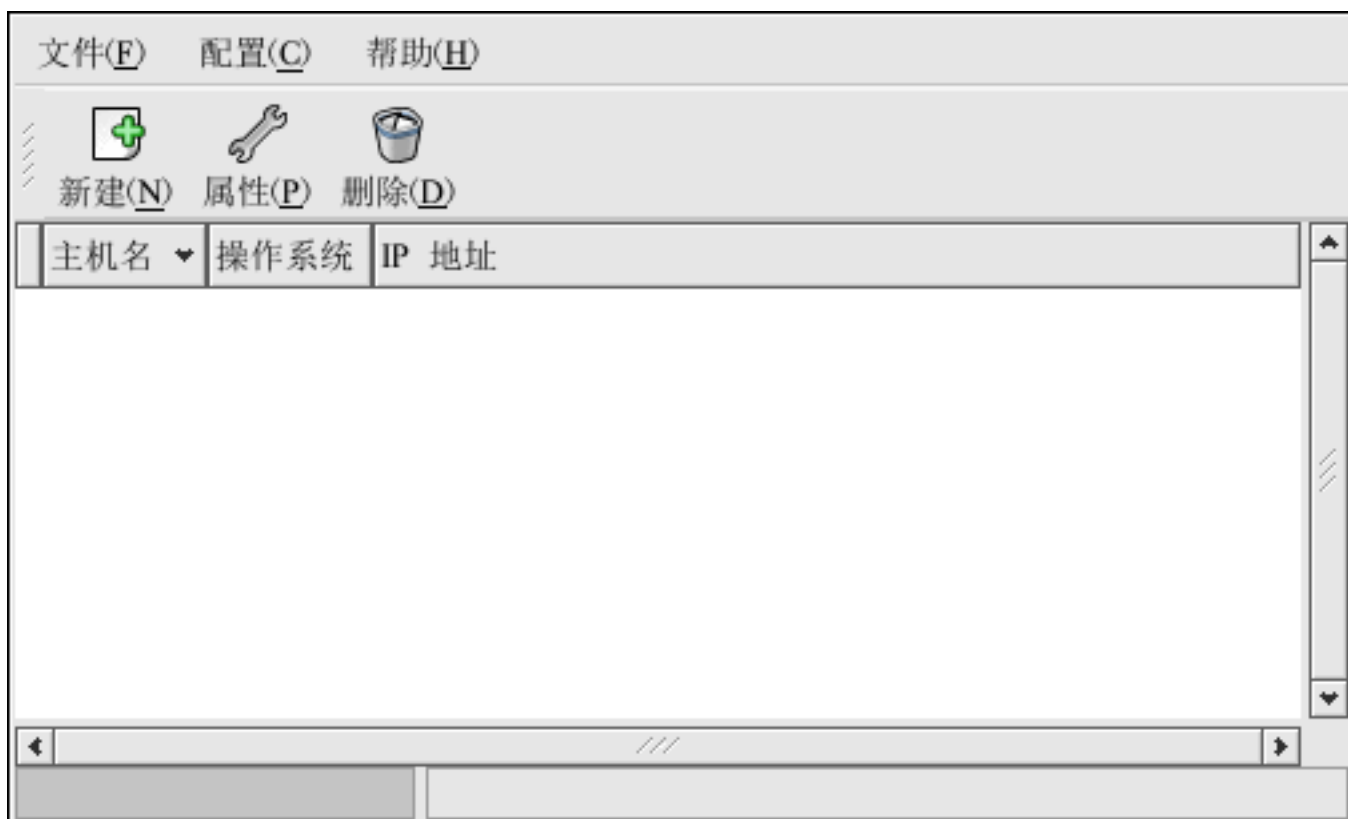


图 11.1. Add Hosts

The next step is to configure which hosts are allowed to connect to the PXE boot server.

To add hosts, click the New button.

图 11.2. Add a Host

Enter the following information:

**Hostname or IP Address/Subnet** — The IP address, fully qualified hostname, or a subnet of systems that should be allowed to connect to the PXE server for installations.

Operating System — The operating system identifier to install on this client. The list is populated from the network install instances created from the Network Installation Dialog.

Serial Console — This option allows use of a serial console.

Kickstart File — The location of a kickstart file to use, such as `http://server.example.com/kickstart/ks.cfg`. This file can be created with the Kickstart Configurator. Refer to [14 Kickstart Configurator](#) for details.

Ignore the Snapshot name and Ethernet options. They are only used for diskless environments.

## 11.5.4. TFTP

### 11.5.4.1. 启动tftp 服务器

On the DHCP server, verify that the `tftp-server` package is installed with the command `rpm -q tftp-server`.

`tftp` 是基于 `xinetd` 的服务；用下面的命令启动它：

```
/sbin/chkconfig --level 345 xinetd on /sbin/chkconfig --level 345 tftp on
```

这些命令会立即启动 `tftp` 和 `xinetd` 服务，并设置在运行级别 3、4 和 5 下引导时启动。

### 11.5.5. 配置 DHCP 服务器

If a DHCP server does not already exist on the network, configure one. Refer to the Red Hat Enterprise Linux Deployment Guide for details. Make sure the configuration file contains the following so that PXE booting is enabled for systems which support it:

```
allow booting; allow bootp; class "pxeclients" { match if substring(option vendor-class-identifier, 0, 9) = "PXEClient"; next-server <server-ip>; filename "linux-install/pxelinux.0"; }
```

这里的 `next-server <server-ip>` 应该用 `tftp` 服务器的 IP 地址来替换。

### 11.5.6. Adding a Custom Boot Message

Optionally, modify `/tftpboot/linux-install/msgs/boot.msg` to use a custom boot message.

### 11.5.7. Performing the PXE Installation

For instructions on how to configure the network interface card with PXE support to boot from the network, consult the documentation for the NIC. It varies slightly per card.

After the system boots the installation program, refer to the [7 Installing on Intel and AMD Systems](#).

## Installing Through VNC

The Red Hat Enterprise Linux and Fedora installer (anaconda) offers you two interactive modes of operation. The original mode is a text-based interface. The newer mode uses GTK+ and runs in the X Window environment. This chapter explains how you can use the graphical installation mode in environments where the system lacks a proper display and input devices typically associated with a workstation. This scenario is typical of systems in datacenters, which are often installed in a rack environment and do not have a display, keyboard, or mouse. Additionally, a lot of these systems even lack the ability to connect a graphical display. Given that enterprise hardware rarely needs that ability at the physical system, this hardware configuration is acceptable.

Even in these environments, however, the graphical installer remains the recommended method of installation. The text mode environment lacks a lot of capabilities found in the graphical mode. Many users still feel that the text mode interface provides them with additional power or configuration ability not found in the graphical version. The opposite is true. Much less development effort is put in to the text-mode environment and specific things (for example, LVM configuration, partition layout, package selection, and bootloader configuration) are deliberately left out of the text mode environment. The reasons for this are:

- Less screen real estate for creating user interfaces similar to those found in the graphical mode.

- Difficult internationalization support.

- Desire to maintain a single interactive installation code path.

Anaconda therefore includes a Virtual Network Computing (VNC) mode that allows the graphical mode of the installer to run locally, but display on a system connected to the network. Installing in VNC mode provides you with the full range of installation options, even in situations where the system lacks a display or input devices.

### 12.1. VNC Viewer

Performing a VNC installation requires a VNC viewer running on your workstation or other terminal computer. Locations where you might want a VNC viewer installed:

- Your workstation

- Laptop on a datacenter crash cart

VNC is open source software licensed under the GNU General Public License. Versions exist for Linux, Windows, and MacOS X. Here are some recommended VNC viewers:

vncviewer is available on Red Hat Enterprise Linux and Fedora Linux by installing the vnc package:

```
# yum install vnc
```

TightVNC is available for Windows at <http://www.tightvnc.com/>

MacOS X includes built-in VNC support as of version 10.5. In the Finder, click the Go menu and choose Connect to Server. In the server address field, you can type vnc://**SERVER:DISPLAY**, where SERVER is the IP address or DNS host name of the VNC server you wish to connect to and DISPLAY is the VNC display number (usually 1), and click Connect.

Once you have verified you have a VNC viewer available, it's time to start the installation.

## 12.2. VNC Modes in Anaconda

Anaconda offers two modes for VNC installation. The mode you select will depend on the network configuration in your environment.

### 12.2.1. Direct Mode

Direct mode VNC in anaconda is when the client initiates a connection to the VNC server running in anaconda. Anaconda will tell you when to initiate this connection in the VNC viewer. Direct mode can be activated by either of the following commands:

Specify `vnc` as a boot argument.

Specify the `vnc` command in the kickstart file used for installation.

When you activate VNC mode, anaconda will complete the first stage of the installer and then start VNC to run the graphical installer. The installer will display a message on the console in the following format:

```
Running anaconda VERSION, the PRODUCT system installer – please wait...
```

Anaconda will also tell you the IP address and display number to use in your VNC viewer. At this point, you need to start the VNC viewer and connect to the target system to continue the installation. The VNC viewer will present anaconda to you in graphical mode.

There are some disadvantages to direct mode, including:

Requires visual access to the system console to see the IP address and port to connect the VNC viewer to.

Requires interactive access to the system console to complete the first stage of the installer.

If either of these disadvantages would prevent you from using direct mode VNC in anaconda, then connect mode is probably more suited to your environment.

### 12.2.2. Connect Mode

Certain firewall configurations or instances where the target system is configured to obtain a dynamic IP address may cause trouble with the direct VNC mode in anaconda. In addition, if you lack a console on the target system to see the message that tells you the IP address to connect to, then you will not be able to continue the installation.

The VNC connect mode changes how VNC is started. Rather than anaconda starting up and waiting for you to connect, the VNC connect mode allows anaconda to automatically connect to your view. You won't need to know the IP address of the target system in this case.

To activate the VNC connect mode, pass the `vnconnect` boot parameter:

```
boot: linux vnconnect=HOST
```

Replace `HOST` with your VNC viewer's IP address or DNS host name. Before starting the installation process on the target system, start up your VNC viewer and have it wait for an incoming connection.

Start the installation and when your VNC viewer displays the graphical installer, you are ready to go.



## 12.3. Installation Using VNC

Now that you have installed a VNC viewer application and selected a VNC mode for use in anaconda, you are ready to begin the installation.

### 12.3.1. Installation Example

The easiest way to perform an installation using VNC is to connect another computer directly to the network port on the target system. The laptop on a datacenter crash cart usually fills this role. If you are performing your installation this way, make sure you follow these steps:

1. Connect the laptop or other workstation to the target system using a crossover cable. If you are using regular patch cables, make sure you connect the two systems using a small hub or switch. Most recent Ethernet interfaces will automatically detect if they need to be crossover or not, so it may be possible to connect the two systems directly using a regular patch cable.
2. Configure the VNC viewer system to use a RFC 1918 address with no gateway. This private network connection will only be used for the purpose of installation. Configure the VNC viewer system to be 192.168.100.1/24. If that address is in use, just pick something else in the RFC 1918 address space that is available to you.
3. Start the installation on the target system.
  - a. Booting the installation DVD or CD.

If booting the installation media (CD or DVD), make sure `vnc` is passed as a boot parameter. To add the `vnc` parameter, you will need a console attached to the target system that allows you to interact with the boot process. Enter the following at the prompt:

```
boot: linux vnc
```

- b. Boot over the network.

If the target system is configured with a static IP address, add the `vnc` command to the kickstart file. If the target system is using DHCP, add `vnconnect=HOST` to the boot arguments for the target system. `HOST` is the IP address or DNS host name of the VNC viewer system. Enter the following at the prompt:

```
boot: linux vnconnect=HOST
```

4. When prompted for the network configuration on the target system, assign it an available RFC 1918 address in the same network you used for the VNC viewer system. For example, 192.168.100.2/24.



#### Note

This IP address is only used during installation. You will have an opportunity to configure the final network settings, if any, later in the installer.

5. Once the installer indicates it is starting anaconda, you will be instructed to connect to the system using the VNC viewer. Connect to the viewer and follow the graphical installation mode instructions found in the product documentation.

### 12.3.2. Kickstart Considerations

If your target system will be booting over the network, VNC is still available. Just add the `vnc` command to the kickstart file for the system. You will be able to connect to the target system using your VNC viewer and monitor the installation progress. The address to use is the one the system is configured with via the kickstart file.

If you are using DHCP for the target system, the reverse `vnconnect` method may work better for you. Rather than adding the `vnc` boot parameter to the kickstart file, add the `vnconnect=HOST` parameter to the list of boot arguments for the target system. For `HOST`, put the IP address or DNS host name of the VNC viewer system. See the next section for more details on using the `vnconnect` mode.

### 12.3.3. 关于防火墙

If you are performing the installation where the VNC viewer system is a workstation on a different subnet from the target system, you may run in to network routing problems. VNC works fine so long as your viewer system has a route to the target system and ports 5900 and 5901 are open. If your environment has a firewall, make sure ports 5900 and 5901 are open between your workstation and the target system.

In addition to passing the `vnc` boot parameter, you may also want to pass the `vncpassword` parameter in these scenarios. While the password is sent in plain text over the network, it does provide an extra step before a viewer can connect to a system. Once the viewer connects to the target system over VNC, no other connections are permitted. These limitations are usually sufficient for installation purposes.



#### Important

Be sure to use a temporary password for the `vncpassword` option. It should not be a password you use on any systems, especially a real root password.

If you continue to have trouble, consider using the `vnconnect` parameter. In this mode of operation, you start the viewer on your system first telling it to listen for an incoming connection. Pass `vnconnect=HOST` at the boot prompt and the installer will attempt to connect to the specified `HOST` (either a hostname or IP address).

## 12.4. References

VNC description at Wikipedia: <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vnc>

TightVNC: <http://www.tightvnc.com/>

RFC 1918 – Address Allocation for Private Networks: <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc1918.txt>

Anaconda boot options: <http://fedoraproject.org/wiki/Anaconda/Options>

Kickstart documentation: <http://fedoraproject.org/wiki/Anaconda/Kickstart>

# kickstart 安装

## 13.1. kickstart 安装是什么？

Many system administrators would prefer to use an automated installation method to install Fedora on their machines. To answer this need, Red Hat created the kickstart installation method. Using kickstart, a system administrator can create a single file containing the answers to all the questions that would normally be asked during a typical installation.

Kickstart files can be kept on a single server system and read by individual computers during the installation. This installation method can support the use of a single kickstart file to install Fedora on multiple machines, making it ideal for network and system administrators.

Kickstart provides a way for users to automate a Fedora installation.

## 13.2. 如何执行 kickstart 安装

kickstart 安装可以使用本地光盘、本地硬盘驱动器、或通过 NFS、FTP、HTTP 来执行。

要使用 kickstart ，你必须：

1. 创建一个 kickstart 文件。
2. 创建有 kickstart 文件的引导介质或者使这个文件在网络上可用。
3. 筹备安装树。
4. 开始 kickstart 安装。

本章详细解释了这些步骤。

## 13.3. 创建 kickstart 文件

The kickstart file is a simple text file, containing a list of items, each identified by a keyword. You can create it by using the Kickstart Configurator application, or writing it from scratch. The Fedora installation program also creates a sample kickstart file based on the options that you selected during installation. It is written to the file `/root/anaconda-ks.cfg`. You should be able to edit it with any text editor or word processor that can save files as ASCII text.

首先，在你创建 kickstart 文件时留意下列问题：

每节必须 指定。除非特别申明，每节内的项目则不必按序排列。小节的顺序为：

命令部分 — 参考 [13.4 “kickstart ”](#) 里的 kickstart 选项列表。你应该包括必需的选项。

`%packages` 部分 — 详情请参考 [13.5 “Package Selection”](#)。

`%pre` 和 `%post` 部分 — 这两个部分可以按任何顺序排列而且不是必需的。详情请参考 [13.6 “ ”](#) 和 [13.7 “ ”](#)。

不必需的项目可以被省略。

如果忽略任何必需的项目，安装程序会提示用户输入相关的项目的选择，就象用户在典型的安装过程中所遇到的一样。一旦用户进行了选择，安装会以非交互的方式（unattended）继续（除非找到另外一个没有指定的项目）。

以井号（“#”）开头的行被当作注释行并被忽略。

对于 kickstart ，下列项目是必需的：

语言

安装方法

设备规格（如果这个设备是在安装过程中所需要的）

键盘设置

upgrade 关键字

引导装载程序配置

如果任何其他的项目被指定为 upgrade，这些项目将被忽略（注意这包括了软件包选择）。

## 13.4. kickstart 选项

下面的选项可以放入 kickstart 文件。如果你喜欢使用图形化的界面来创建 kickstart 文件，你可以使用「Kickstart 配置」应用程序。详情请参考 [14 Kickstart Configurator](#)。



### Note

如果某选项后面跟随了一个等号（=），它后面就必须指定一个值。在示例命令中，括号（`[]`）中的选项是命令的可选参数。

#### autopart（可选）

自动创建分区 — 大于 1GB 的根分区（/）、交换分区和适合于不同体系结构的引导分区。一个或多个缺省分区的大小可以用 part 指令重新定义。

`--encrypted` — Should all devices with support be encrypted by default? This is equivalent to checking the Encrypt checkbox on the initial partitioning screen.

`--passphrase=` — Provide a default system-wide passphrase for all encrypted devices.

#### ignoredisk（可选）

导致安装程序忽略指定的磁盘。如果你使用自动分区并希望忽略某些磁盘的话，这就很有用。例如，没有 ignoredisk，如要试图在 SAN-cluster 系统里部署，kickstart 就会失败，因为安装程序检测到 SAN 不返回分区表的被动路径（passive path）。

如果你有磁盘的多个路径时，ignoredisk 选项也有用处。

语法是：

```
ignoredisk --drives=drive1,drive2,...
```

这里 *driveN* 是 sda、sdb ... hda 等等中的一个。

---

**autostep** (可选)

和 `interactive` 相似，除了它进入下一屏幕。它通常用于调试。

`--autoscreenshot` — Take a screenshot at every step during installation and copy the images over to `/root/anaconda-screenshots` after installation is complete. This is most useful for documentation.

**auth** 或 **authconfig** (必需)

为系统设置验证选项。这和在安装后运行的 `authconfig` 命令相似。在缺省情况下，密码通常被加密但不使用影子文件 (shadowed)。

`--enablemd5` — Use md5 encryption for user passwords.

`--enablenis` — Turns on NIS support. By default, `--enablenis` uses whatever domain it finds on the network. A domain should almost always be set by hand with the `--nisdomain=` option.

`--nisdomain=` — NIS domain name to use for NIS services.

`--nisservice=` — Server to use for NIS services (broadcasts by default).

`--usesshadow` or `--enableshadow` — Use shadow passwords.

`--enableldap` — Turns on LDAP support in `/etc/nsswitch.conf`, allowing your system to retrieve information about users (UIDs, home directories, shells, etc.) from an LDAP directory. To use this option, you must install the `nss_ldap` package. You must also specify a server and a base DN (distinguished name) with `--ldapserver=` and `--ldapbasedn=`.

`--enableldapauth` — Use LDAP as an authentication method. This enables the `pam_ldap` module for authentication and changing passwords, using an LDAP directory. To use this option, you must have the `nss_ldap` package installed. You must also specify a server and a base DN with `--ldapserver=` and `--ldapbasedn=`.

`--ldapserver=` — If you specified either `--enableldap` or `--enableldapauth`, use this option to specify the name of the LDAP server to use. This option is set in the `/etc/ldap.conf` file.

`--ldapbasedn=` — If you specified either `--enableldap` or `--enableldapauth`, use this option to specify the DN in your LDAP directory tree under which user information is stored. This option is set in the `/etc/ldap.conf` file.

`--enableldaptls` — Use TLS (Transport Layer Security) lookups. This option allows LDAP to send encrypted usernames and passwords to an LDAP server before authentication.

`--enablekrb5` — Use Kerberos 5 for authenticating users. Kerberos itself does not know about home directories, UIDs, or shells. If you enable Kerberos, you must make users' accounts known to this workstation by enabling LDAP, NIS, or Hesiod or by using the `/usr/sbin/useradd` command. If you use this option, you must have the `pam_krb5` package installed.

`--krb5realm=` — The Kerberos 5 realm to which your workstation belongs.

`--krb5kdc=` — The KDC (or KDCs) that serve requests for the realm. If you have multiple KDCs in your realm, separate their names with commas (,).

`--krb5adminserver=` — The KDC in your realm that is also running `kadmind`. This server handles password changing and other administrative requests. This server must be run on the master KDC if you have more than one KDC.

`--enablehesiod` — Enable Hesiod support for looking up user home directories, UIDs, and shells. More information on setting up and using Hesiod on your network is in `/usr/share/doc/glibc-2.x.x/README.hesiod`, which is included in the glibc package. Hesiod is an extension of DNS that uses DNS records to store information about users, groups, and various other items.

`--hesiodlhs` — The Hesiod LHS ("left-hand side") option, set in `/etc/hesiod.conf`. This option is used by the Hesiod library to determine the name to search DNS for when looking up information, similar to LDAP's use of a base DN.

`--hesiodrhs` — The Hesiod RHS ("right-hand side") option, set in `/etc/hesiod.conf`. This option is used by the Hesiod library to determine the name to search DNS for when looking up information, similar to LDAP's use of a base DN.



### Note

要查找 "jim" 的用户信息，Hesiod 库查找 `jim.passwd<LHS><RHS>`，这解析为类似于 `(jim*:501:501:Jungle Jim:/home/jim:/bin/bash)` 的 TXT 记录。对于组，情况是相同的，除了将使用 `jim.group<LHS><RHS>`。

根据号码来查找用户和组是通过为 "jim.passwd" 建立 CNAME "501.uid" 以及为 "jim.group" 建立 CNAME "501.gid" 来处理的。注意，当库决定搜索的名字时，LHS 和 RHS 都没有句点 . 在前面，所以 LHS 和 RHS 通常都以句点开始。

`--enablesmbauth` — Enables authentication of users against an SMB server (typically a Samba or Windows server). SMB authentication support does not know about home directories, UIDs, or shells. If you enable SMB, you must make users' accounts known to the workstation by enabling LDAP, NIS, or Hesiod or by using the `/usr/sbin/useradd` command to make their accounts known to the workstation. To use this option, you must have the `pam_smb` package installed.

`--smbservers=` — The name of the server(s) to use for SMB authentication. To specify more than one server, separate the names with commas (,).

`--smbworkgroup=` — The name of the workgroup for the SMB servers.

`--enablecache` — Enables the `nsd` service. The `nsd` service caches information about users, groups, and various other types of information. Caching is especially helpful if you choose to distribute information about users and groups over your network using NIS, LDAP, or hesiod.

### bootloader (必需)

指定引导装载程序怎样被安装。对于安装和升级，这个选项都是必需的。



### 重要

If you select text mode for a kickstart installation, make sure that you specify choices for the partitioning, bootloader, and package selection options. These steps are automated in text mode, and anaconda cannot prompt you for missing information. If you do not provide choices for these options, anaconda will stop the installation process.

`--append=` — Specifies kernel parameters. To specify multiple parameters, separate them with spaces. For example:

```
bootloader --location=mbr --append="hdd=ide-scsi ide=nodma"
```

--driveorder — Specify which drive is first in the BIOS boot order. For example:

```
bootloader --driveorder=sda,hda
```

--location= — Specifies where the boot record is written. Valid values are the following: mbr (the default), partition (installs the boot loader on the first sector of the partition containing the kernel), or none (do not install the boot loader).

--password= — If using GRUB, sets the GRUB boot loader password to the one specified with this option. This should be used to restrict access to the GRUB shell, where arbitrary kernel options can be passed.

--md5pass= — If using GRUB, similar to --password= except the password should already be encrypted.

--upgrade — Upgrade the existing boot loader configuration, preserving the old entries. This option is only available for upgrades.

#### clearpart (可选)

在创建新分区之前，从系统上删除分区。默认不会删除任何分区。



#### Note

如果使用了 clearpart 命令，--onpart 命令就不能够用在逻辑分区上。

--all — Erases all partitions from the system.

--drives= — Specifies which drives to clear partitions from. For example, the following clears all the partitions on the first two drives on the primary IDE controller:

```
clearpart --drives=hda,hdb --all
```

--initlabel — Initializes the disk label to the default for your architecture (for example msdos for x86 and gpt for Itanium). It is useful so that the installation program does not ask if it should initialize the disk label if installing to a brand new hard drive.

--linux — Erases all Linux partitions.

--none (default) — Do not remove any partitions.

#### cmdline (可选)

在完全的非交互式的命令行模式下进行安装。任何交互式的提示都会终止安装。这个模式对于有 x3270 控制台的 IBM System z 系统很有用。

#### device (可选)

在多数的 PCI 系统里，安装程序会正确地自动探测以太网卡和 SCSI 卡。然而，在老的系统和某些 PCI 系统里，kickstart 需要提示来找到正确的设备。device 命令用来告诉安装程序安装额外的模块，它有着这样的格式：

```
device <type> <moduleName> --opts=<options>
```

<type> — Replace with either scsi or eth.

<moduleName> — Replace with the name of the kernel module which should be installed.

--opts= — Mount options to use for mounting the NFS export. Any options that can be specified in /etc/fstab for an NFS mount are allowed. The options are listed in the nfs(5) man page. Multiple options are separated with a comma.

#### driverdisk (可选)

你可以在 kickstart 安装过程中使用驱动软盘。你必须把驱动软盘的内容复制到系统的硬盘分区的根目录下。然后你必须使用 driverdisk 命令来告诉安装程序到哪去寻找驱动磁盘。

```
driverdisk <partition> [--type=<fstype>]
```

另外，你也可以为驱动程序盘指定一个网络位置：

```
driverdisk --source=ftp://path/to/dd.img
driverdisk --source=http://path/to/dd.img
driverdisk --source=nfs:host:/path/to/img
```

<partition> — Partition containing the driver disk.

--type= — File system type (for example, vfat or ext2).

#### firewall (可选)

这个选项对应安装程序里的「防火墙配置」屏幕：

```
firewall --enabled|--disabled [--trust=] <device> [--port=]
```

--enabled or --enable — Reject incoming connections that are not in response to outbound requests, such as DNS replies or DHCP requests. If access to services running on this machine is needed, you can choose to allow specific services through the firewall.

--disabled or --disable — Do not configure any iptables rules.

--trust= — Listing a device here, such as eth0, allows all traffic coming from that device to go through the firewall. To list more than one device, use --trust eth0 --trust eth1. Do NOT use a comma-separated format such as --trust eth0, eth1.

<incoming> — Replace with one or more of the following to allow the specified services through the firewall.

--ssh

--telnet

--smtp

--http

--ftp



`--port=` — You can specify that ports be allowed through the firewall using the `port:protocol` format. For example, to allow IMAP access through your firewall, specify `imap:tcp`. Numeric ports can also be specified explicitly; for example, to allow UDP packets on port 1234 through, specify `1234:udp`. To specify multiple ports, separate them by commas.

#### firstboot (可选)

决定是否在系统第一次引导时启动「设置代理」。如果启用，`firstboot` 软件包必须被安装。如果不指定，这个选项是缺省为禁用的。

`--enable` or `--enabled` — The Setup Agent is started the first time the system boots.

`--disable` or `--disabled` — The Setup Agent is not started the first time the system boots.

`--reconfig` — Enable the Setup Agent to start at boot time in reconfiguration mode. This mode enables the language, mouse, keyboard, root password, security level, time zone, and networking configuration options in addition to the default ones.

#### halt (可选)

在成功地完成安装后关闭系统。这和手工安装相似，手工安装的 `anaconda` 会显示一条信息并等待用户按任意键来重启系统。在 `kickstart` 安装过程中，如果没有指定完成方法（`completion method`），将缺省使用 `reboot` 选项。

`halt` 选项基本和 `shutdown -h` 命令相同。

关于其他的完成方法，请参考 `kickstart` 的 `poweroff`、`reboot` 和 `shutdown` 选项。

#### graphical (可选)

在图形模式下执行 `kickstart` 安装。`kickstart` 安装默认在图形模式下安装。

#### install (可选)

告诉系统来安装全新的系统而不是在现有系统上升级。这是缺省的模式。你必须指定安装的类型，如 `cdrom`、`harddrive`、`nfs` 或 `url`（FTP 或 HTTP 安装）。`install` 命令和安装方法命令必须处于不同的行上。

`cdrom` — Install from the first CD-ROM drive on the system.

`harddrive` — Install from a Red Hat installation tree on a local drive, which must be either `vfat` or `ext2`.

`--biospart=`

从 BIOS 分区来安装（如 `82`）。

`--partition=`

从分区安装（如 `sdb2`）。

`--dir=`

包含安装树的 ***variant*** 目录的目录。

例如：

```
harddrive --partition=hdb2 --dir=/tmp/install-tree
```

`nfs` — Install from the NFS server specified.

`--server=`

要从中安装的服务器（主机名或 IP）。

`--dir=`

包含安装树的 *variant* 目录的目录。

`--opts=`

用于挂载 NFS 输出的 Mount 选项（可选）。

例如：

```
nfs --server=nfsserver.example.com --dir=/tmp/install-tree
```

`url` — Install from an installation tree on a remote server via FTP or HTTP.

例如：

```
url --url http://<server>/<dir>
```

或：

```
url --url ftp://<username>:<password>@<server>/<dir>
```

`interactive`（可选）

在安装过程中使用 kickstart 文件里提供的信息，但允许检查和修改给定的值。你将遇到安装程序的每个屏幕以及 kickstart 文件里给出的值。通过点击「下一步」接受给定的值或是改变值后点击「下一步」继续。请参考 `autostep` 命令。

`iscsi`（可选）

`issci --ipaddr= [options]`.

`--target` —

`--port=` —

`--user=` —

`--password=` —

`key`（可选）

Specify an installation key, which is needed to aid in package selection and identify your system for support purposes. This command is specific to Red Hat Enterprise Linux; it has no meaning for Fedora and will be ignored.

`--skip` — Skip entering a key. Usually if the key command is not given, anaconda will pause at this step to prompt for a key. This option allows automated installation to continue if you do not have a key or do not want to provide one.

**keyboard** (必需)

设置系统键盘类型。这里是 i386、Itanium、和 Alpha 机器上可用键盘的列表：

```
be-latin1, bg, br-abnt2, cf, cz-lat2, cz-us-qwertz, de, de-latin1,
de-latin1-nodeadkeys, dk, dk-latin1, dvorak, es, et, fi, fi-latin1,
fr, fr-latin0, fr-latin1, fr-pc, fr_CH, fr_CH-latin1, gr, hu, hu101,
is-latin1, it, it-ibm, it2, jp106, la-latin1, mk-utf, no, no-latin1,
pl, pt-latin1, ro_win, ru, ru-cp1251, ru-ms, ru1, ru2, ru_win,
se-latin1, sg, sg-latin1, sk-qwerty, slovene, speakup, speakup-lt,
sv-latin1, sg, sg-latin1, sk-querly, slovene, trq, ua, uk, us, us-acentos
```

文件 `/usr/lib/python2.2/site-packages/rhpl/keyboard_models.py` 也包含这个列表而且是 `rhpl` 软件包的一部分。

**lang** (必需)

设置在安装过程中使用的语言以及系统的缺省语言。例如，要把语言设置为英语，`kickstart` 文件应该包含下面的一行：

```
lang en_US
```

文件 `/usr/share/system-config-language/locale-list` 里每一行的第一个字段提供了一个有效语言代码的列表，它是 `system-config-language` 软件包的一部分。

文本模式的安装过程不支持某些语言（主要是中文、日语、韩文和印度的语言）。如果用 `lang` 命令指定这些语言中的一种，安装过程仍然会使用英语，但是系统会缺省使用指定的语言。

**langsupport** (deprecated)

`langsupport` 关键字已经被取消而且使用它将导致屏幕出现错误信息及终止安装。作为代替，你应该在 `kickstart` 文件里的 `%packages` 部分列出所支持的语言的支持软件包组。例如，要支持法语，你应该把下面的语句加入到 `%packages`：

```
@french-support
```

**logvol** (可选)

使用以下语法来为逻辑卷管理 (LVM) 创建逻辑卷：

```
logvol <mntpoint> --vgname=<name> --size=<size> --name=<name> <options>
```

这些选项如下所示：

`--noformat` — Use an existing logical volume and do not format it.

`--useexisting` — Use an existing logical volume and reformat it.

`--fstype=` — Sets the file system type for the logical volume. Valid values are `xf`s, `ext2`, `ext3`, `ext4`, `swap`, `vfat`, and `hfs`.

`--fsoptions=` — Specifies a free form string of options to be used when mounting the filesystem. This string will be copied into the `/etc/fstab` file of the installed system and should be enclosed in quotes.

`--bytes-per-inode=` — Specifies the size of inodes on the filesystem to be made on the logical volume. Not all filesystems support this option, so it is silently ignored for those cases.

`--grow=` — Tells the logical volume to grow to fill available space (if any), or up to the maximum size setting.

`--maxsize=` — The maximum size in megabytes when the logical volume is set to grow. Specify an integer value here, and do not append the number with MB.

`--recommended=` — Determine the size of the logical volume automatically.

`--percent=` — Specify the size of the logical volume as a percentage of available space in the volume group.

首先创建分区，然后创建逻辑卷组，再创建逻辑卷。例如：

```
part pv.01 --size 3000
volgroup myvg pv.01
logvol / --vgname=myvg --size=2000 --name=rootvol
```

#### logging (可选)

这个命令控制安装过程中 `anaconda` 的错误日志。它对安装好的系统没有影响。

`--host=` — Send logging information to the given remote host, which must be running a `syslogd` process configured to accept remote logging.

`--port=` — If the remote `syslogd` process uses a port other than the default, it may be specified with this option.

`--level=` — One of `debug`, `info`, `warning`, `error`, or `critical`.

指定 `tty3` 上显示的信息的最小级别。然而，无论这个级别怎么设置，所有的信息仍将发送到日志文件。

#### mediacheck (可选)

如果指定的话，`anaconda` 将在安装介质上运行 `mediacheck`。这个命令只适用于交互式的安装，所以缺省是禁用的。

#### monitor (可选)

如果 `monitor` 命令没有指定，`anaconda` 将使用 `X` 来自动检测你的显示器设置。请在手工配置显示器之前尝试这个命令。

`--hsync=` — Specifies the horizontal sync frequency of the monitor.

`--monitor=` — Use specified monitor; monitor name should be from the list of monitors in `/usr/share/hwdata/MonitorsDB` from the `hwdata` package. The list of monitors can also be found on the `X` Configuration screen of the Kickstart Configurator. This is ignored if `--hsync` or `--vsync` is provided. If no monitor information is provided, the installation program tries to probe for it automatically.

`--noprobe=` — Do not try to probe the monitor.

`--vsync=` — Specifies the vertical sync frequency of the monitor.

mouse (已取消)

The mouse keyword is deprecated.

network (可选)

为系统配置网络信息。如果 kickstart 安装不要求联网（换句话说，不从 NFS、HTTP 或 FTP 安装），就不需要为系统配置网络。如果安装要求联网而 kickstart 文件里没有提供网络信息，安装程序会假定从 eth0 通过动态 IP 地址（BOOTP/DHCP）来安装，并配置安装完的系统动态决定 IP 地址。network 选项为通过网络的 kickstart 安装以及所安装的系统配置联网信息。

`--bootproto=` — One of dhcp, bootp, or static.

缺省值是 dhcp。bootp 和 dhcp 被认为是相同的。

DHCP 方法使用 DHCP 服务器系统来获取它的联网配置。你可以会猜到，BOOTP 方法和它很相似，要求 BOOTP 服务器来提供网络配置。要指示系统使用 DHCP：

```
network --bootproto=dhcp
```

要指示某机器使用 BOOTP 来获取它的联网配置，在 kickstart 文件中使用以下行：

```
network --bootproto=bootp
```

static 方法要求你在 kickstart 文件里输入所有的网络信息。顾名思义，这些信息是静态的且在安装过程中和安装后所有。静态网络的设置行更为复杂，因为你必须包括所有的网络配置信息。你必须指定 IP 地址、网络、网关和命名服务器。例如（“\”表示连续的行）：

```
network --bootproto=static --ip=10.0.2.15 --netmask=255.255.255.0 \  
--gateway=10.0.2.254 --nameserver=10.0.2.1
```

如果你使用静态方法，请注意以下两个限制：

所有静态联网配置信息都必须在 行上指定；你不能使用反斜线来换行。

You can also configure multiple nameservers here. To do so, specify them as a comma-delimited list in the command line. For example:

```
network --bootproto=static --ip=10.0.2.15 --netmask=255.255.255.0 \  
--gateway=10.0.2.254 --nameserver 192.168.2.1,192.168.3.1
```

`--device=` — Used to select a specific Ethernet device for installation. Note that using `--device=` is not effective unless the kickstart file is a local file (such as `ks=floppy`), since the installation program configures the network to find the kickstart file. For example:

```
network --bootproto=dhcp --device=eth0
```

`--ip=` — IP address for the machine to be installed.

`--gateway=` — Default gateway as an IP address.

`--nameserver=` — Primary nameserver, as an IP address.

`--nodns` — Do not configure any DNS server.

`--netmask=` — Netmask for the installed system.

`--hostname=` — Hostname for the installed system.

`--ethtool=` — Specifies additional low-level settings for the network device which will be passed to the ethtool program.

`--essid=` — The network ID for wireless networks.

`--wepkey=` — The encryption key for wireless networks.

`--onboot=` — Whether or not to enable the device at boot time.

`--class=` — The DHCP class.

`--mtu=` — The MTU of the device.

`--noipv4` — Disable IPv4 on this device.

`--noipv6` — Disable IPv6 on this device.

multipath (可选)

`multipath --name= --device= --rule=`

`part` 或 `partition` (对于安装是必需的, 升级可忽略)。  
在系统上创建分区。

If more than one Fedora installation exists on the system on different partitions, the installation program prompts the user and asks which installation to upgrade.



### Warning

作为安装过程的一部分, 所有被创建的分区都会被格式化, 除非使用了 `--noformat` 和 `--onpart`。



### 重要

If you select text mode for a kickstart installation, make sure that you specify choices for the partitioning, bootloader, and package selection options. These steps are automated in text mode, and anaconda cannot prompt you for missing information. If you do not provide choices for these options, anaconda will stop the installation process.

请参考 [13.4.1](#) “ ” 里关于 `part` 的详细示例。

`<mntpoint>` — The `<mntpoint>` is where the partition is mounted and must be of one of the following forms:

`/<path>`

例如, `/`、`/usr`、`/home`

`swap`

该分区被用作交换空间。

要自动决定交换分区的大小, 使用 `--recommended` 选项:

```
swap --recommended
```

The recommended maximum swap size for machines with less than 2GB of RAM is twice the amount of RAM. For machines with 2GB or more, this recommendation changes to 2GB plus the amount of RAM.

`raid.<id>`

该分区用于 software RAID (参考 `raid`) 。

`pv.<id>`

该分区用于 LVM (参考 `logvol`) 。

`--size=` — The minimum partition size in megabytes. Specify an integer value here such as 500. Do not append the number with MB.

`--grow` — Tells the partition to grow to fill available space (if any), or up to the maximum size setting.



### Note

If you use `--grow=` without setting `--maxsize=` on a swap partition, Anaconda will limit the maximum size of the swap partition. For systems that have less than 2GB of physical memory, the imposed limit is twice the amount of physical memory. For systems with more than 2GB, the imposed limit is the size of physical memory plus 2GB.

`--maxsize=` — The maximum partition size in megabytes when the partition is set to grow. Specify an integer value here, and do not append the number with MB.

`--noformat` — Tells the installation program not to format the partition, for use with the `--onpart` command.

`--onpart=` or `--usepart=` — Put the partition on the *already existing* device. For example:

```
partition /home --onpart=hda1
```

把 `/home` 置于必须已经存在的 `/dev/hda1` 上。

`--ondisk=` or `--ondrive=` — Forces the partition to be created on a particular disk. For example, `--ondisk=sdb` puts the partition on the second SCSI disk on the system.

- `--asprimary` — Forces automatic allocation of the partition as a primary partition, or the partitioning fails.
- `--type=` (replaced by `fstype`) — This option is no longer available. Use `fstype`.
- `--fstype=` — Sets the file system type for the partition. Valid values are `xf`s, `ext2`, `ext3`, `ext4`, `swap`, `vf`at, and `hfs`.
- `--start=` — Specifies the starting cylinder for the partition. It requires that a drive be specified with `--ondisk=` or `ondrive=`. It also requires that the ending cylinder be specified with `--end=` or the partition size be specified with `--size=`.
- `--end=` — Specifies the ending cylinder for the partition. It requires that the starting cylinder be specified with `--start=`.
- `--bytes-per-inode=` — Specifies the size of inodes on the filesystem to be made on the partition. Not all filesystems support this option, so it is silently ignored for those cases.
- `--recommended` — Determine the size of the partition automatically.
- `--onbiosdisk` — Forces the partition to be created on a particular disk as discovered by the BIOS.
- `--encrypted` — Specifies that this partition should be encrypted.
- `--passphrase=` — Specifies the passphrase to use when encrypting this partition. Without the above `--encrypted` option, this option does nothing. If no passphrase is specified, the default system-wide one is used, or the installer will stop and prompt if there is no default.



### Note

如果因为某种原因分区失败了，虚拟终端 3 上会显示诊断信息。

### poweroff (可选)

在安装成功后关闭系统并断电。通常，在手工安装过程中，`anaconda` 会显示一条信息并等待用户按任意键来重新启动系统。在 `kickstart` 的安装过程中，如果没有指定完成方法，将使用缺省的 `reboot` 选项。

`poweroff` 选项和 `shutdown -p` 基本相同。



### Note

`poweroff` 选项和系统硬件非常相关。特别是，某些硬件部件如 BIOS、APM（高级电源管理）和 ACPI（高级配置和电源接口）必须能和系统内核相互作用。关于系统的 APM/ACPI 能力的更多信息，请和生产商联系。

关于其他的完成方法，请参考 `halt`、`reboot` 和 `shutdown` `kickstart` 选项。

### raid (可选)

组成软件 RAID 设备。该命令的格式是：

```
raid <mntpoint> --level=<level> --device=<mddevice> <partitions*>
```



*<mntpoint>* — Location where the RAID file system is mounted. If it is */*, the RAID level must be 1 unless a boot partition (*/boot*) is present. If a boot partition is present, the */boot* partition must be level 1 and the root (*/*) partition can be any of the available types. The *<partitions\*>* (which denotes that multiple partitions can be listed) lists the RAID identifiers to add to the RAID array.

*--level=* — RAID level to use (0, 1, or 5).

*--device=* — Name of the RAID device to use (such as *md0* or *md1*). RAID devices range from *md0* to *md15*, and each may only be used once.

*--bytes-per-inode=* — Specifies the size of inodes on the filesystem to be made on the RAID device. Not all filesystems support this option, so it is silently ignored for those cases.

*--spares=* — Specifies the number of spare drives allocated for the RAID array. Spare drives are used to rebuild the array in case of drive failure.

*--fstype=* — Sets the file system type for the RAID array. Valid values are *xf*s, *ext2*, *ext3*, *ext4*, *swap*, *vf*at, and *h*fs.

*--fsoptions=* — Specifies a free form string of options to be used when mounting the filesystem. This string will be copied into the */etc/fstab* file of the installed system and should be enclosed in quotes.

*--noformat* — Use an existing RAID device and do not format the RAID array.

*--useexisting* — Use an existing RAID device and reformat it.

*--encrypted* — Specifies that this RAID device should be encrypted.

*--passphrase=* — Specifies the passphrase to use when encrypting this RAID device. Without the above *--encrypted* option, this option does nothing. If no passphrase is specified, the default system-wide one is used, or the installer will stop and prompt if there is no default.

下面的例子展示了假定系统里有三个 SCSI 磁盘的情况下，怎样创建 */* 上的 RAID 1 分区，以及 */usr* 上的 RAID 5 分区。它也为每个磁盘创建一个交换分区，一共三个。

```
part raid.01 --size=60 --ondisk=sda
part raid.02 --size=60 --ondisk=sdb
part raid.03 --size=60 --ondisk=sdc
```

```
part swap --size=128 --ondisk=sda
part swap --size=128 --ondisk=sdb
part swap --size=128 --ondisk=sdc
```

```
part raid.11 --size=1 --grow --ondisk=sda
part raid.12 --size=1 --grow --ondisk=sdb
part raid.13 --size=1 --grow --ondisk=sdc
```


```
raid / --level=1 --device=md0 raid.01 raid.02 raid.03
raid /usr --level=5 --device=md1 raid.11 raid.12 raid.13
```

请参考 [13.4.1](#) “ ” 里的 raid 的详细示例。

**reboot** (可选)

在成功完成安装（没有参数）后重新启动。通常，`kickstart` 会显示信息并等待用户按任意键来重新启动系统。

`reboot` 选项基本和 `shutdown -r` 命令相同。



**Note**

使用 `reboot` 选项 会导致安装的死循环，这依赖于安装介质和方法。

如果在 `kickstart` 文件里没有显性地指定其他方法的话，`reboot` 选项是缺省的完成方法。

关于其他的完成方法，请参考 `halt`、`poweroff` 和 `shutdown` `kickstart` 选项。

**repo** (可选)

配置用于软件包安装来源的额外的 `yum` 库。可以指定多个 `repo` 行。

```
repo --name=<repoId> [--baseurl=<url>| --mirrorlist=<url>]
```

`--name=` — The repo id. This option is required.

`--baseurl=` — The URL for the repository. The variables that may be used in yum repo config files are not supported here. You may use one of either this option or `--mirrorlist`, not both.

`--mirrorlist=` — The URL pointing at a list of mirrors for the repository. The variables that may be used in yum repo config files are not supported here. You may use one of either this option or `--baseurl`, not both.

**rootpw** (必需)

把系统的根口令设置为 `<password>` 参数。

```
rootpw [--iscrypted] <password>
```

`--iscrypted` — If this is present, the password argument is assumed to already be encrypted.

**selinux** (可选)

在系统里设置 SELinux 状态。在 `anaconda` 里，SELinux 缺省为 `enforcing`。

```
selinux [--disabled|--enforcing|--permissive]
```

`--enforcing` — Enables SELinux with the default targeted policy being enforced.



**Note**

如果 `kickstart` 文件里没有 `selinux` 选项，SELinux 将被启用并缺省设置为 `--enforcing`。

`--permissive` — Outputs warnings based on the SELinux policy, but does not actually enforce the policy.

`--disabled` — Disables SELinux completely on the system.

For complete information regarding SELinux for Fedora, refer to the *Fedora 11 Security-Enhanced Linux User Guide*.

#### services (可选)

修改运行在缺省运行级别下的缺省的服务集。在 `disabled` 列表里列出的服务将在 `enabled` 列表里的服务启用之前被禁用。

`--disabled` — Disable the services given in the comma separated list.

`--enabled` — Enable the services given in the comma separated list.



#### Do not include spaces in the list of services

If you include spaces in the comma-separated list, kickstart will enable or disable only the services up to the first space. For example:

```
services --disabled auditd, cups,smartd, nfslock
```

will disable only the auditd service. To disable all four services, this entry should include no spaces between services:

```
services --disabled auditd,cups,smartd,nfslock
```

#### shutdown (可选)

在成功完成安装后关闭系统。在 `kickstart` 安装过程中，如果没有指定完成方法，将使用缺省的 `reboot` 选项。

`shutdown` 选项和 `shutdown` 命令大体相同。

关于其他的完成方法，请参考 `halt`、`poweroff` 和 `reboot` kickstart 选项。

#### skipx (可选)

如果存在，安装的系统上就不会配置 X。

#### text (可选)

在文本模式下执行 `kickstart` 安装。 `kickstart` 安装默认在图形模式下安装。



#### 重要

If you select text mode for a kickstart installation, make sure that you specify choices for the partitioning, bootloader, and package selection options. These steps are automated in text mode, and anaconda cannot prompt you for missing information. If you do not provide choices for these options, anaconda will stop the installation process.

#### timezone (可选)

把系统时区设置为 `<timezone>`，它可以是 `timeconfig` 列出的任何时区。

```
timezone [--utc] <timezone>
```

`--utc` — If present, the system assumes the hardware clock is set to UTC (Greenwich Mean) time.

**upgrade** (可选)

告诉系统升级现有的系统而不是安装一个全新的系统。你必须指定 `cdrom`、`harddrive`、`nfs` 或 `url` (对于 FTP 和 HTTP 而言) 中的一个作为安装树的位置。详情请参考 `install`。

**user** (可选)

在系统上创建新用户。

```
user --name=<username> [--groups=<list>] [--homedir=<homedir>] [--password=<password>] [--iscrypted] [--shell=<shell>] [--uid=<uid>]
```

`--name=` — Provides the name of the user. This option is required.

`--groups=` — In addition to the default group, a comma separated list of group names the user should belong to.

`--homedir=` — The home directory for the user. If not provided, this defaults to `/home/<username>`.

`--password=` — The new user's password. If not provided, the account will be locked by default.

`--iscrypted=` — Is the password provided by `--password` already encrypted or not?

`--shell=` — The user's login shell. If not provided, this defaults to the system default.

`--uid=` — The user's UID. If not provided, this defaults to the next available non-system UID.

**vnc** (可选)

允许通过 VNC 远程地查看图形化的安装。文本模式的安装通常更喜欢使用这个方法，因为在文本模式下有某些大小和语言的限制。如果为 `no`，这个命令将启动不需要密码的 VNC 服务器并打印出需要用来连接远程机器的命令。

```
vnc [--host=<hostname>] [--port=<port>] [--password=<password>]
```

`--host=` — Instead of starting a VNC server on the install machine, connect to the VNC viewer process listening on the given hostname.

`--port=` — Provide a port that the remote VNC viewer process is listening on. If not provided, `anaconda` will use the VNC default.

`--password=` — Set a password which must be provided to connect to the VNC session. This is optional, but recommended.

**volgroup** (可选)

用来创建逻辑卷管理 (LVM) 组，其语法格式为：

```
volgroup <name> <partition> <options>
```

这些选项如下所示：

`--noformat` — Use an existing volume group and do not format it.

`--useexisting` — Use an existing volume group and reformat it.

`--pesize=` — Set the size of the physical extents.

首先创建分区，然后创建逻辑卷组，再创建逻辑卷。例如：

```
part pv.01 --size 3000
volgroup myvg pv.01
logvol / --vgname=myvg --size=2000 --name=rootvol
```

请参考 [13.4.1](#) “ ” 里的 volgroup 的详细示例。

#### xconfig (可选)

配置 X Window 系统。如果没有指定这个选项且安装了 X，用户必须在安装过程中手工配置 X；如果最终系统里没有安装 X，这个选项不应该被使用。

`--driver` — Specify the X driver to use for the video hardware.

`--videoram=` — Specifies the amount of video RAM the video card has.

`--defaultdesktop=` — Specify either GNOME or KDE to set the default desktop (assumes that GNOME Desktop Environment and/or KDE Desktop Environment has been installed through %packages).

`--startxonboot` — Use a graphical login on the installed system.

`--resolution=` — Specify the default resolution for the X Window System on the installed system. Valid values are 640x480, 800x600, 1024x768, 1152x864, 1280x1024, 1400x1050, 1600x1200. Be sure to specify a resolution that is compatible with the video card and monitor.

`--depth=` — Specify the default color depth for the X Window System on the installed system. Valid values are 8, 16, 24, and 32. Be sure to specify a color depth that is compatible with the video card and monitor.

#### zerombr (可选)

If zerombr is specified any invalid partition tables found on disks are initialized. This destroys all of the contents of disks with invalid partition tables.

Note that this command was previously specified as zerombr yes. This form is now deprecated; you should now simply specify zerombr in your kickstart file instead.

#### zfc (可选)

Define a Fiber channel device (IBM System z).

```
zfc [--devnum=<devnum>] [--fcplun=<fcplun>] [--scsiid=<scsiid>] [--scsilun=<scsilun>] [--wwpn=<wwpn>]
```

#### %include (optional)

使用 `%include /path/to/file` 命令可以把其他文件的内容包含在 kickstart 文件里，就好像这些内容出现在 kickstart 文件的 `%include` 命令后一样。

### 13.4.1. 高级的分区示例

下面是一个简单的、集成的示例，它展示了 clearpart、raidpart、volgroup 和 logvol 等 kickstart 选项：

```
clearpart --drives=hda,hdc --initlabel
# Raid 1 IDE config
part raid.11 --size 1000 --asprimary --ondrive=hda
```

```

part raid.12  --size 1000    --asprimary    --ondrive=hda
part raid.13  --size 2000    --asprimary    --ondrive=hda
part raid.14  --size 8000                --ondrive=hda
part raid.15  --size 1 --grow                --ondrive=hda
part raid.21  --size 1000    --asprimary    --ondrive=hdc
part raid.22  --size 1000    --asprimary    --ondrive=hdc
part raid.23  --size 2000    --asprimary    --ondrive=hdc
part raid.24  --size 8000                --ondrive=hdc
part raid.25  --size 1 --grow                --ondrive=hdc

# You can add --spares=x
raid /        --fstype ext3 --device md0 --level=RAID1 raid.11 raid.21
raid /safe    --fstype ext3 --device md1 --level=RAID1 raid.12 raid.22
raid swap     --fstype swap --device md2 --level=RAID1 raid.13 raid.23
raid /usr     --fstype ext3 --device md3 --level=RAID1 raid.14 raid.24
raid pv.01    --fstype ext3 --device md4 --level=RAID1 raid.15 raid.25

# LVM configuration so that we can resize /var and /usr/local later
volgroup sysvg pv.01
logvol /var          --vgname=sysvg --size=8000    --name=var
logvol /var/freespace --vgname=sysvg --size=8000    --name=freespacetouse
logvol /usr/local    --vgname=sysvg --size=1 --grow --name=usrlocal

```

这个高级示例实现了 RAID 上的 LVM，以及根据以后的需要重新调整不同目录的大小的能力。

## 13.5. Package Selection

在 kickstart 文件里使用 `%packages` 命令来列出你想安装的软件包（仅用于全新安装，升级安装时不支持软件包指令）。

Packages can be specified by group or by individual package name, including with globs using the asterisk. The installation program defines several groups that contain related packages. Refer to the *variant/repodata/comps-\*.xml* file on the first Fedora CD-ROM for a list of groups. Each group has an id, user visibility value, name, description, and package list. In the package list, the packages marked as mandatory are always installed if the group is selected, the packages marked default are selected by default if the group is selected, and the packages marked optional must be specifically selected even if the group is selected to be installed.

多数情况下，你只需要列出想安装的组而不是单个的软件包。注意 Core 和 Base 组总是缺省被选择，所以并不需要在 `%packages` 部分指定它们。

这里是一个 `%packages` 选择的示例：

```

%packages
@ X Window System
@ GNOME Desktop Environment
@ Graphical Internet
@ Sound and Video dhcp

```

如你所看到的，组被指定了，每个一行，用 `@` 符号开头，后面是 `comps.xml` 文件里给出的组全名。组也可以用组的 id 指定，如 `gnome-desktop`。不需要额外字符就可以指定单独的软件包（上例里的 `dhcp` 行就是一个单独的软件包）。

你还可以从默认的软件包列表中指定要安装或不安装的软件包：

```
-autofs
```

`%packages` 指令也支持下面的选项：

```
--nobase
```

不要安装 `@Base` 组。如果你想创建一个很小的系统，你可以使用这个选项。

```
--resolvedeps
```

`--resolvedeps` 选项已经被取消了。目前依赖关系可以自动地被解析。

```
--ignoredeps
```

`--ignoredeps` 选项已经被取消了。目前依赖关系可以自动地被解析。

```
--ignoremissing
```

忽略缺少的软件包或软件包组，而不是暂停安装来向用户询问是中止还是继续安装。例如：

```
%packages --ignoremissing
```

## 13.6. 预安装脚本

你可以在 `ks.cfg` 文件被解析后马上加入要运行的命令。这个部分必须处于 `kickstart` 文件的最后（在命令部分之后）而且必须用 `%pre` 命令开头。你可以在 `%pre` 部分访问网络；然而，此时 `network` 还未被配置，所以只能使用 IP 地址。



### Note

注意，预安装脚本不在改换了的根环境（`chroot`）中运行。

```
--interpreter /usr/bin/python
```

允许你指定不同的脚本语言，如 Python。把 `/usr/bin/python` 替换成你想使用的脚本语言。

### 13.6.1. 范例

下面是一个 `%pre` 部分的示例：

```
%pre
#!/bin/sh
hds=""
mymedia=""
for file in /proc/ide/h* do
    mymedia=`cat $file/media`
    if [ $mymedia == "disk" ] ; then
        hds="$hds `basename $file`"
    fi
done
set $hds
```

```

numhd=`echo $#`
drive1=`echo $hds | cut -d' ' -f1`
drive2=`echo $hds | cut -d' ' -f2`
#Write out partition scheme based on whether there are 1 or 2 hard drives
if [ $numhd == "2" ]; then
    #2 drives
    echo "#partitioning scheme generated in %pre for 2 drives" > /tmp/part-include
    echo "clearpart --all" >> /tmp/part-include
    echo "part /boot --fstype ext3 --size 75 --ondisk hda" >> /tmp/part-include
    echo "part / --fstype ext3 --size 1 --grow --ondisk hda" >> /tmp/part-include
    echo "part swap --recommended --ondisk $drive1" >> /tmp/part-include
    echo "part /home --fstype ext3 --size 1 --grow --ondisk hdb" >> /tmp/part-include
else
    #1 drive
    echo "#partitioning scheme generated in %pre for 1 drive" > /tmp/part-include
    echo "clearpart --all" >> /tmp/part-include
    echo "part /boot --fstype ext3 --size 75" >> /tmp/part-include
    echo "part swap --recommended" >> /tmp/part-include
    echo "part / --fstype ext3 --size 2048" >> /tmp/part-include
    echo "part /home --fstype ext3 --size 2048 --grow" >> /tmp/part-include
fi

```

该脚本判定系统上的硬盘驱动器的数量，并根据系统上有一个还是两个驱动器而编写带有不同分区方案的文本文件。与其在 kickstart 文件中有一组分区命令，你可以包括以下行：

```
%include /tmp/part-include
```

脚本里选择的分区命令被使用了。

### Note

kickstart 文件的 pre-installation 脚本部分 管理多个安装树或安装介质。这个信息必须包含在创建的每个 ks.cfg 文件里，这是因为 pre-installation 脚本是在安装程序的第二阶段才被执行。

## 13.7. 安装后脚本

你也可以加入在系统安装完毕后运行的命令。这部分内容必须在 kickstart 的最后而且用 %post 命令开头。它被用于实现某些功能，如安装其他的软件和配置其他的命名服务器。

### Note

如果你用静态 IP 信息和命名服务器配置网络，你可以在 %post 部分访问和解析 IP 地址。如果你使用 DHCP 配置网络，当安装程序执行到 %post 部分时，/etc/resolv.conf 文件还没有准备好。此时，你可以访问网络，但是你不能解析 IP 地址。因此，如果你使用 DHCP，你必须在 %post 部分指定 IP 地址。





### Note

post-install 脚本是在 chroot 环境里运行的。因此，某些任务如从安装介质复制脚本或 RPM 将无法执行。

#### --nochroot

允许你指定你想在 chroot 环境之外运行的命令。

下例把 /etc/resolv.conf 文件复制到刚安装的文件系统里。

```
%post --nochroot cp /etc/resolv.conf /mnt/sysimage/etc/resolv.conf
```

#### --interpreter /usr/bin/python

允许你指定不同的脚本语言，如 Python。把 /usr/bin/python 替换成你想使用的脚本语言。

## 13.7.1. 范例

向红帽网络 Satellite 注册：

```
%post
( # Note that in this example we run the entire %post section as a subshell for logging.
wget -O- http://proxy-or-sat.example.com/pub/bootstrap_script | /bin/bash
/usr/sbin/rhnreg_ks --activationkey=<activationkey>
# End the subshell and capture any output to a post-install log file.
) 1
>/root/post_install.log 2
>&1
```

从 NFS 共享目录运行叫 runme 的命令：

```
mkdir /mnt/temp
mount -o nolock 10.10.0.2:/usr/new-machines /mnt/temp open -s -w --
/mnt/temp/runme
umount /mnt/temp
```



### Note

kickstart 模式 支持 NFS 文件锁定，因此，当挂载 NFS 目录时必须使用 -o nolock 选项。

## 13.8. 如何使 kickstart 文件可被利用

kickstart 文件必须位于以下几个位置之一：

- 在引导盘上
- 在引导光盘上
- 在网络上

通常，kickstart 文件被复制到引导盘上，或在网络上提供。基于网络的方法使用最普遍，因为多数 kickstart 安装是在联网的计算机上执行的。

让我们更深入地看一看存放 kickstart 文件的位置。

### 13.8.1. 创建 kickstart 引导介质

Diskette-based booting is no longer supported in Fedora. Installations must use CD-ROM or flash memory products for booting. However, the kickstart file may still reside on a diskette's top-level directory, and must be named ks.cfg.

To perform a CD-ROM-based kickstart installation, the kickstart file must be named ks.cfg and must be located in the boot CD-ROM's top-level directory. Since a CD-ROM is read-only, the file must be added to the directory used to create the image that is written to the CD-ROM. Refer to [3.4.2](#) “ ” for instructions on creating boot media; however, before making the file.iso image file, copy the ks.cfg kickstart file to the isolinux/ directory.

要执行使用笔型（pen-based）闪存设备的 kickstart 安装，kickstart 文件的名字必须为 ks.cfg 且必须位于闪存设备的顶层目录里。现创建引导映像，然后再复制 ks.cfg 文件。

例如，使用 dd 命令把引导映像文件转移到笔型驱动器（/dev/sda）：

```
dd if=diskboot.img of=/dev/sda bs=1M
```

#### Note

创建用于引导的优盘笔型驱动器是可能的，但是这严重依赖于系统的 BIOS 设置。请询问你的硬件供应商，看你的系统是否支持引导至其他的设备。

### 13.8.2. 在网络上提供 Kickstart 文件

使用 kickstart 的网络安装比较普遍，因为系统管理员可以快速轻松地自动化许多联网计算机的安装。一般说来，这种方法对于在局域网上具有 BOOTP/DHCP 和 NFS 服务器的管理员来说，使用最普遍。BOOTP/DHCP 服务器用来给客户机提供联网信息，在安装中使用的文件则由 NFS 服务器提供。这两项服务经常在同一部机器上运行，但是这并不是必需的。

To perform a network-based kickstart installation, you must have a BOOTP/DHCP server on your network, and it must include configuration information for the machine on which you are attempting to install Fedora. The BOOTP/DHCP server provides the client with its networking information as well as the location of the kickstart file.

如果 BOOTP/DHCP 服务器指定了 kickstart 文件，客户机系统将尝试包含这个文件的 NFS 挂载，并把文件复制到客户端。具体的设置依你所使用的 BOOTP/DHCP 服务器的不同而不同。

下例是 DHCP 服务器的 dhcpd.conf 文件里的一行：

```
filename "/usr/new-machine/kickstart/"; next-server blarg.redhat.com;
```

注意你应该用 kickstart 文件（或是 kickstart 文件所位于的目录）的名字替换 filename 后的值，并且用 NFS 服务器的名字替换 next-server 后的值。

如果 BOOTP/DHCP 服务器返回的文件名以斜杠 ("/") 结束，这将被解释为目录。在这种情况下，客户系统使用 NFS 挂载这个路径，并搜索特定的文件。客户系统搜索的文件名是：

```
<ip-addr>-kickstart
```

文件名的 **<ip-addr>** 部分应该用客户机的 IP 地址替换。例如，IP 地址为 10.10.0.1 的机器的文件名将是 10.10.0.1-kickstart。

注意，如果你没有指定服务器名，客户端系统就会试图把应答 BOOTP/DHCP 请求的服务器作为它的 NFS 服务器。如果你没有指定路径或文件名，客户端系统就会试图从 BOOTP/DHCP 服务器挂载 /kickstart 并用上面描述的 **<ip-addr>-kickstart** 文件名来寻找 kickstart 文件。

## 13.9. 提供安装树

The kickstart installation must access an *installation tree*. An installation tree is a copy of the binary Fedora CD-ROMs with the same directory structure.

If you are performing a CD-based installation, insert the Fedora CD-ROM #1 into the computer before starting the kickstart installation.

If you are performing a hard drive installation, make sure the ISO images of the binary Fedora CD-ROMs are on a hard drive in the computer.

If you are performing a network-based (NFS, FTP, or HTTP) installation, you must make the installation tree available over the network. Refer to [3.5](#) “ ” for details.

## 13.10. 开始 kickstart 安装

To begin a kickstart installation, you must boot the system from boot media you have made or the Fedora CD-ROM #1, and enter a special boot command at the boot prompt. The installation program looks for a kickstart file if the ks command line argument is passed to the kernel.

### 第一张光盘和软盘

The linux ks=floppy command also works if the ks.cfg file is located on a vfat or ext2 file system on a diskette and you boot from the Fedora CD-ROM #1.

An alternate boot command is to boot off the Fedora CD-ROM #1 and have the kickstart file on a vfat or ext2 file system on a diskette. To do so, enter the following command at the boot: prompt:

```
linux ks=hd:fd0:/ks.cfg
```

### 使用驱动程序盘

如果你要使用带有 kickstart 的驱动盘，你也需要指定 dd 选项。例如，从软盘引导并使用驱动盘，你可以在 boot: 提示下输入下面的命令：

```
linux ks=floppy dd
```

### 引导光盘

如果 kickstart 文件位于引导光盘上（如 [13.8.1](#) “ *kickstart* ” 中所描述的），把光盘插入机器，引导系统并在 boot: 提示下输入下面的命令（这里的 ks.cfg 是 kickstart 文件的名字）：

```
linux ks=cdrom:/ks.cfg
```

其它启动 kickstart 安装的方法如下列举:

**askmethod**

Do not automatically use the CD-ROM as the install source if we detect a Fedora CD in your CD-ROM drive.

**autostep**

使 kickstart 成为非交互式的。

**debug**

马上启动 pdb。

**dd**

使用驱动盘。

**dhcpclass=<class>**

发送自定义的 DHCP vendor class identifier。ISC 的 dhcpd 可以用 "option vendor-class-identifier" 来查看这个值。

**dns=<dns>**

用逗号隔开的用于网络安装的命名服务器列表。

**driverdisk**

和 'dd' 相同。

**expert**

启用特殊的功能:

允许对可移除介质 (removable media) 进行分区

提示驱动盘

**gateway=<gw>**

用于网络安装的网关。

**图形化**

强制图形化安装。ftp/http 安装模式时必须使用图形化界面。

**isa**

提示用户输入 ISA 设备配置。

**ip=<ip>**

用于网络安装的 IP 地址, 对于 DHCP 使用 'dhcp' 。

**keymap=<keymap>**

使用的键盘格式。有效值是那些可以用于 'keyboard' kickstart 命令的值。

**ks=nfs:<server>:/<path>**

安装程序在 NFS 服务器 <server> 上的 <path> 里寻找 kickstart 文件。安装程序使用 DHCP 来配置以太网卡。例如, 如果你的 NFS 服务器是 server.example.com 且 kickstart 文件是 NFS 共享目录的里 /mydir/ks.cfg, 正确的引导命令应该是 ks=nfs:server.example.com:/mydir/ks.cfg。

**ks=http://<server>/<path>**

安装程序在 HTTP 服务器 <server> 上的 <path> 里寻找 kickstart 文件。安装程序使用 DHCP 来配置以太网卡。例如，如果你的 HTTP 服务器是 server.example.com 且 kickstart 文件是 HTTP 目录的里 /mydir/ks.cfg，正确的引导命令应该是 ks=http://server.example.com/mydir/ks.cfg。

**ks=floppy**

安装程序在 /dev/fd0 里的软盘上的 vfat 或 ext2 文件系统里寻找 ks.cfg 文件。

**ks=floppy:/<path>**

安装程序在 /dev/fd0 里的软盘上以 <path> 寻找 kickstart 文件。

**ks=hd:<device>:<file>**

安装程序把文件系统挂载在 <device>（必须是 vfat 或 ext2），而且在该文件系统里以 <file> 来寻找 kickstart 文件（例如，ks=hd:sda3:/mydir/ks.cfg）。

**ks=file:/<file>**

安装程序试图从文件系统里读取 <file>; 并没有挂载任何文件。如果 kickstart 文件已经在 initrd 映像里时我们通常使用这个方法。

**ks=cdrom:/<path>**

安装程序以 <path> 在光盘上寻找 kickstart 文件。

**ks**

如果单独使用 ks，安装程序将配置以太网卡使用 DHCP。kickstart 文件从 DHCP 应答的 "bootServer" 里读取，就像是 NFS 服务器共享 kickstart 文件一样。在缺省情况下，bootServer 与 DHCP 服务器是同一个。kickstart 文件的名字是下列之一：

如果指定了 DHCP 且引导文件以 / 开头，DHCP 提供的引导文件将在 NFS 服务器上寻找。

如果指定了 DHCP 且引导文件不以 / 开头，DHCP 提供的引导文件将在 NFS 服务器的 /kickstart 目录里寻找。

如果 DHCP 没有指定引导文件，安装程序将试图读取 /kickstart/1.2.3.4-kickstart，这里的 1.2.3.4 是被安装的机器的数字化 IP 地址。

**ksdevice=<device>**

安装程序使用这个网络设备来连接网络。例如，要使用通过 eth1 设备连接至系统的 NFS 服务器上的 kickstart 文件来启动 kickstart 安装，可以在 boot: 提示下使用 ks=nfs:<server>/<path> ksdevice=eth1 命令。

**kssendmac**

把 HTTP 头加到对设置系统有帮助的 ks=http:// 请求里。在 CGI 环境变量里包括所有网卡的 MAC 地址，如："X-RHN-Provisioning-MAC-0: eth0 01:23:45:67:89:ab"。

**lang=<lang>**

安装时使用的语言。这应该是 'lang' kickstart 命令可以使用的有效语言之一。

**loglevel=<level>**

设置记录日志信息的最低级别。<level> 的值可以是 debug、info、warning、error 和 critical。缺省值是 info。

**lowres**

强制图形用户界面安装程序运行在 640x480 分辨率下。

**mediacheck**

激活加载者代码，可以允许用户选择测试安装介质（如果是基于 ISO 的方法）的完整性。

**method=cdrom**

执行基于光盘的安装。

**method=ftp://<path>**

使用 <path> 来进行 FTP 安装。

**method=hd:<dev>:<path>**

用 <dev> 上的 <path> 进行基于硬盘驱动器的安装。

**method=http://<path>**

用 <path> 来进行基于 HTTP 的安装。

**method=nfs:<path>**

用 <path> 来进行 NFS 安装。

**netmask=<nm>**

用于网络安装的掩码。

**nofallback**

如果图形化用户界面退出时失败。

**nofb**

不要载入某些语言进行文本安装时所需要的 VGA16 帧缓冲。

**nofirewire**

不要装载对防火墙设备的支持。

**noipv6**

在安装过程中禁用 IPv6 网络。

**nokill**

当发生致命错误时，阻止 anaconda 终止所有运行程序的调试选项。

**nomount**

不要在救援模式下自动挂载任何已安装的 Linux 分区。

**nonet**

不要自动探测网络设备。

**noparport**

不要试图装载对并行端口的支持。

**nopass**

不要把键盘和鼠标信息传递给安装程序的第二阶段。当执行网络安装时，它可以用来在安装的第二阶段测试鼠标和键盘配置屏幕。

**nopcmcia**

忽略系统上的任何 PCMCIA 控制器。

**noprobe**

提示用户输入而不要试图检测硬件。

**noshell**

安装过程中 tty2 上不要出现 shell。

**nostorage**

不要自动探测存储设备（SCSI、IDE、RAID）。

**nousb**

不要装载 USB 支持（如果安装过程在早些时候挂起，这会有帮助）。

**nousbstorage**

不要在安装程序的载入程序中禁止载入 `usbstorage` 模块。它对 SCSI 系统上的设备排序可能有帮助。

**rescue**

运行救援环境。

**resolution=<mode>**

在指定模式下运行安装程序，如 '1024x768' 模式。

**serial**

启用串行控制台支持。

**skipddc**

跳过对显示器的 DDC 探测，如果系统被挂起的这可能有帮助。

**syslog=<host>[:<port>]**

一旦安装过程被启动并运行，发送日志信息到 `<host>` 的可选端口 `<port>` 上的 `syslog` 进程。这要求远程 `syslog` 进程接受连接（`-r` 选项）。

**text**

强制文本模式的安装。

**重要**

If you select text mode for a kickstart installation, make sure that you specify choices for the partitioning, bootloader, and package selection options. These steps are automated in text mode, and anaconda cannot prompt you for missing information. If you do not provide choices for these options, anaconda will stop the installation process.

**updates**

提示包含更新（bug 修复）的软盘。

**updates=ftp://<path>**

基于 FTP 的包含更新的映像文件。

**updates=http://<path>**

基于 HTTP 的包含更新的映像文件。

**upgradeany**

不需要符合升级所期望的语法的 `/etc/redhat-release`。

**vnc**

启用基于 vnc 的安装。你将需要连接到使用 vnc 客户端程序的机器。

`vncconnect=<host>[:<port>]`

一旦安装过程开始启动并运行，连接到 `<host>` 上的 vnc 客户端，你也可以使用可选端口 `<port>`。

也要求 'vnc' 选项被指定。

`vncpassword=<password>`

启用 vnc 连接的密码。这将阻止其他人无意地连接到基于 vnc 的安装上。

也要求 'vnc' 选项被指定。



## Kickstart Configurator

「Kickstart 配置程序」允许你用图形化的界面来创建和修改 kickstart 文件，这样你就不需要记住相关的语法。

要使用「Kickstart 配置程序」，你必须运行 X Window 系统。要启动「Kickstart 配置程序」，选择「应用程序」 => 「系统工具」 => Kickstart，或在 shell 提示下键入 `/usr/sbin/system-config-kickstart` 命令。

在你建立 kickstart 文件时，你可以在任何时候选择「文件」 => 「预览」来查看当前的选择。

要修改现有的 kickstart 文件，选择「文件」 => 「打开」并选择文件。

### 14.1. 基本配置



图 14.1. 基本配置

从「缺省语言」菜单里选择安装过程中和安装后的缺省语言。

从「键盘」菜单里选择系统键盘类型。

从「时区」菜单里选择系统的时区。要使系统使用 UTC，选择「使用 UTC 时钟」。

在「根密码」文本框里输入系统的根密码，并在「确认密码」文本框里输入相同的密码。这是为了确保你没有在敲错密码之后却又忘记密码是什么。要把密码加密并保存在文件里，选择「给根密码加密」。

如果选择了加密选项，在保存文件时，你输入的密码明文将被加密并写入到 `kickstart` 文件里。不要输入已经加密的密码并选择对它进行加密。因为 `kickstart` 是一个易读的普通文本文件，我们推荐使用加密的密码。

用「目标系统结构」指定安装过程中使用对应哪种硬件体系结构的发布版本。

选择「安装后重新启动系统」来在安装结束后自动重新启动。

**Kickstart** 安装缺省是以图形模式执行的。要覆盖这个缺省选项并使用文本模式，选择「在文本模式下执行安装」。

你可以在交互模式下执行 `kickstart` 安装。这意味着安装程序将使用 `kickstart` 文件里预配置的所有选项，但它允许你在进入下一屏幕时预览这些选项。要进入下一屏幕，在已经确认或改变了设置后点击「下一步」按钮继续。要执行这种类型的安装，选择「在交互模式下执行安装」选项。

## 14.2. 安装方法

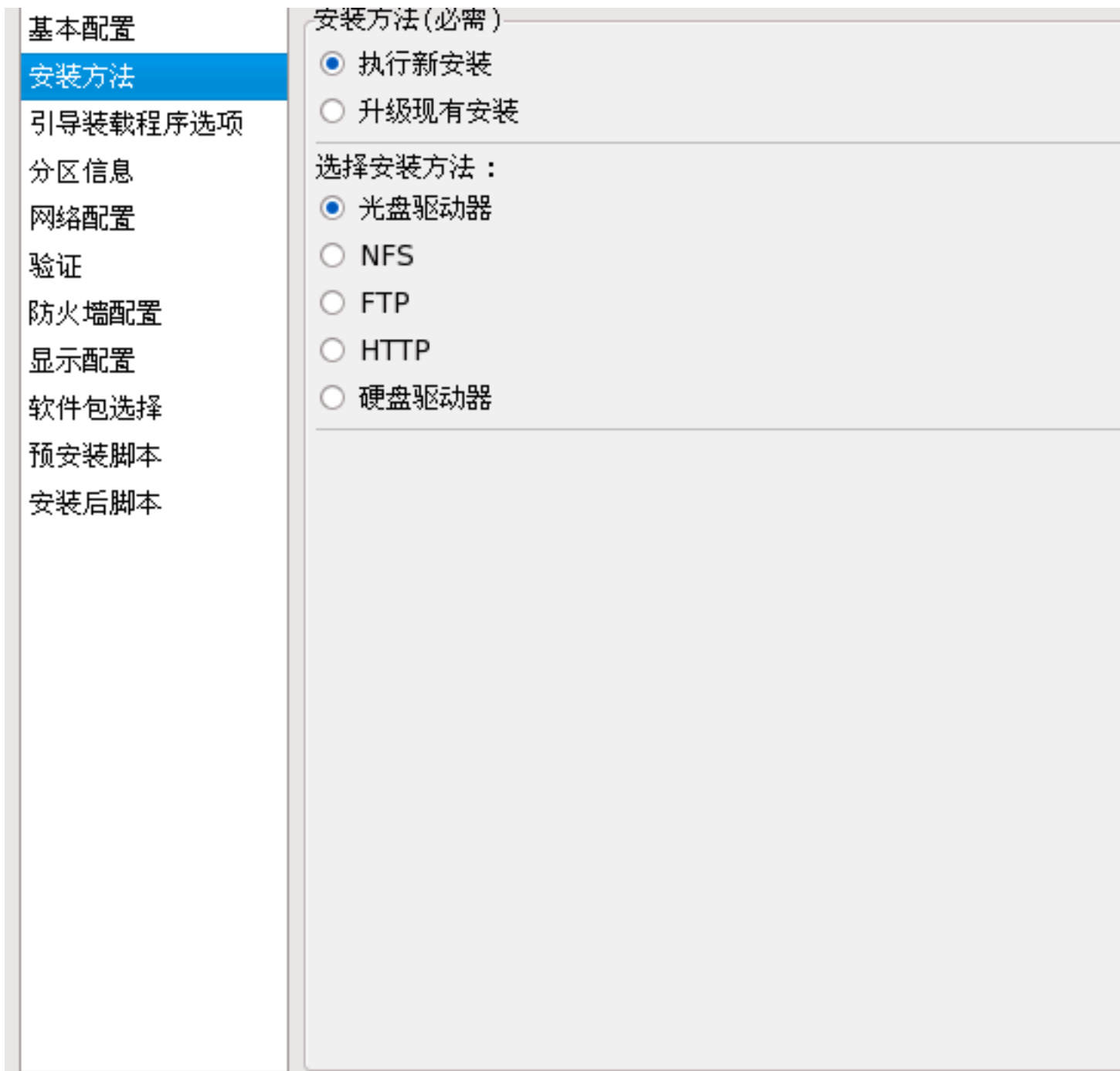


图 14.2. 安装方法

「安装方法」屏幕允许你选择执行全新的安装还是升级。如果你选择升级，「分区信息」和「软件包选择」选项将被禁用。kickstart 升级不支持这些选项。

选择 kickstart 进行全新安装还是升级：

CD-ROM — Choose this option to install or upgrade from the Fedora CD-ROMs.

NFS — 从 NFS 共享目录进行安装或升级。在“NFS 服务器”文本框里，输入全限定域名或 IP 地址。“NFS 目录”里输入包含安装树的 **variant** 目录的 NFS 目录的名字。例如，如果 NFS 服务器包含了 `/mirrors/redhat/i386/Server/` 目录，则输入 `/mirrors/redhat/i386/` 作为 NFS 目录。

FTP — 从 FTP 服务器安装或升级。在“FTP 目录”里输入包含 **variant** 目录的 FTP 目录的名字。例如，如果 FTP 服务器包含了目录 `/mirrors/redhat/i386/Server/`，输入 `/mirrors/redhat/i386/Server/` 作为 FTP 目录。如果 FTP 服务器要求用户名和密码，在此也需要指定。

HTTP — 从 HTTP 服务器进行安装或升级。在“HTTP 服务器”文本框里，输入全限定域名或 IP 地址。在“HTTP 目录”里，输入包含 **variant** 目录的 HTTP 目录的名字。例如，如果 HTTP 服务器包含了 `/mirrors/redhat/i386/Server/` 目录，就输入 `/mirrors/redhat/i386/Server/` 作为 HTTP 目录。

Hard Drive — Choose this option to install or upgrade from a hard drive. Hard drive installations require the use of ISO (or CD-ROM) images. Be sure to verify that the ISO images are intact before you start the installation. To verify them, use an md5sum program as well as the linux mediacheck boot option as discussed in [6.3](#) “ ”. Enter the hard drive partition that contains the ISO images (for example, `/dev/hda1`) in the Hard Drive Partition text box. Enter the directory that contains the ISO images in the Hard Drive Directory text box.

### 14.3. 引导装载程序选项

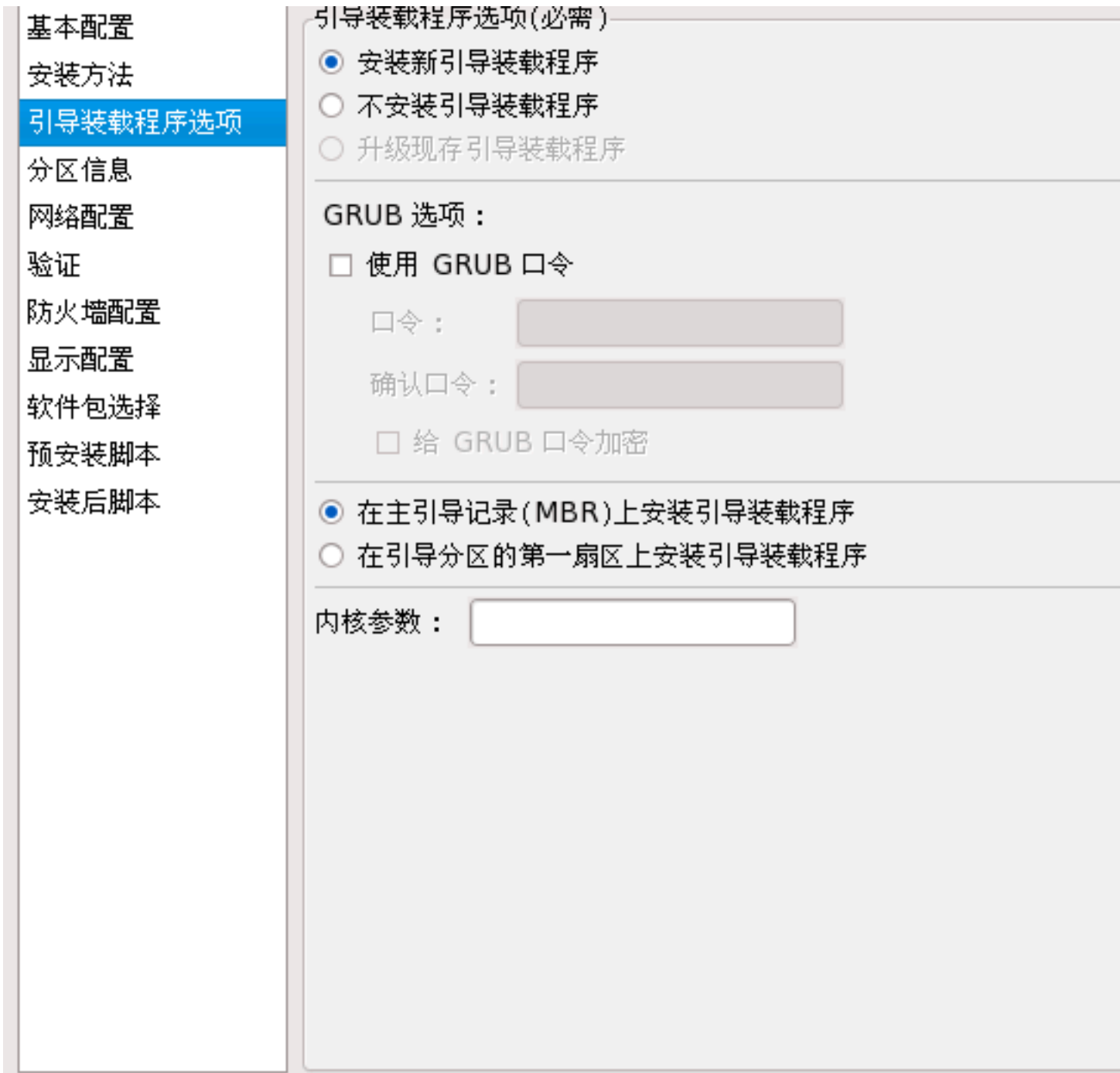


图 14.3. 引导装载程序选项

请注意，如果你已经指定 x86 / x86\_64 之外的体系结构，这个屏幕将是禁用的。

GRUB is the default boot loader for Fedora on x86 / x86\_64 architectures. If you do not want to install a boot loader, select Do not install a boot loader. If you choose not to install a boot loader, make sure you create a boot diskette or have another way to boot your system, such as a third-party boot loader.

---

你必须选择在哪儿安装引导装载程序（主引导分区或者是 `/boot` 分区的第一个扇区）。如果你计划把它作为主引导装载程序，就安装在主引导分区上。

在系统引导时如要把任何特殊参数传递给内核，在「内核参数」文本域输入这些参数。例如，如果你有一个 IDE CD-ROM 刻录机，你可以配置 `hdd=ide-scsi` 作为内核参数（这里的 `hdd` 是 CD-ROM 设备），这告诉内核使用必须在使用 `cdrecord` 之前装载的 SCSI 仿真驱动。

你可以设置密码来保护 GRUB 引导装载程序。选择「使用 GRUB 密码」并在「密码」域输入密码，在「确认密码」文本域输入相同的密码。要把密码加密并保存在文件里，选择「给 GRUB 密码加密」。如果选择了加密选项，在保存文件时，你所输入的密码明文将被加密并写入到 `kickstart` 文件里。如果你输入的是已经加密的密码，则要去掉选定加密选项。

如果在「安装方法」页选择了「升级现有安装」，选择「升级现存引导装载程序」来升级现有的引导装载程序配置，并保留旧的条目。

### 14.4. 分区信息

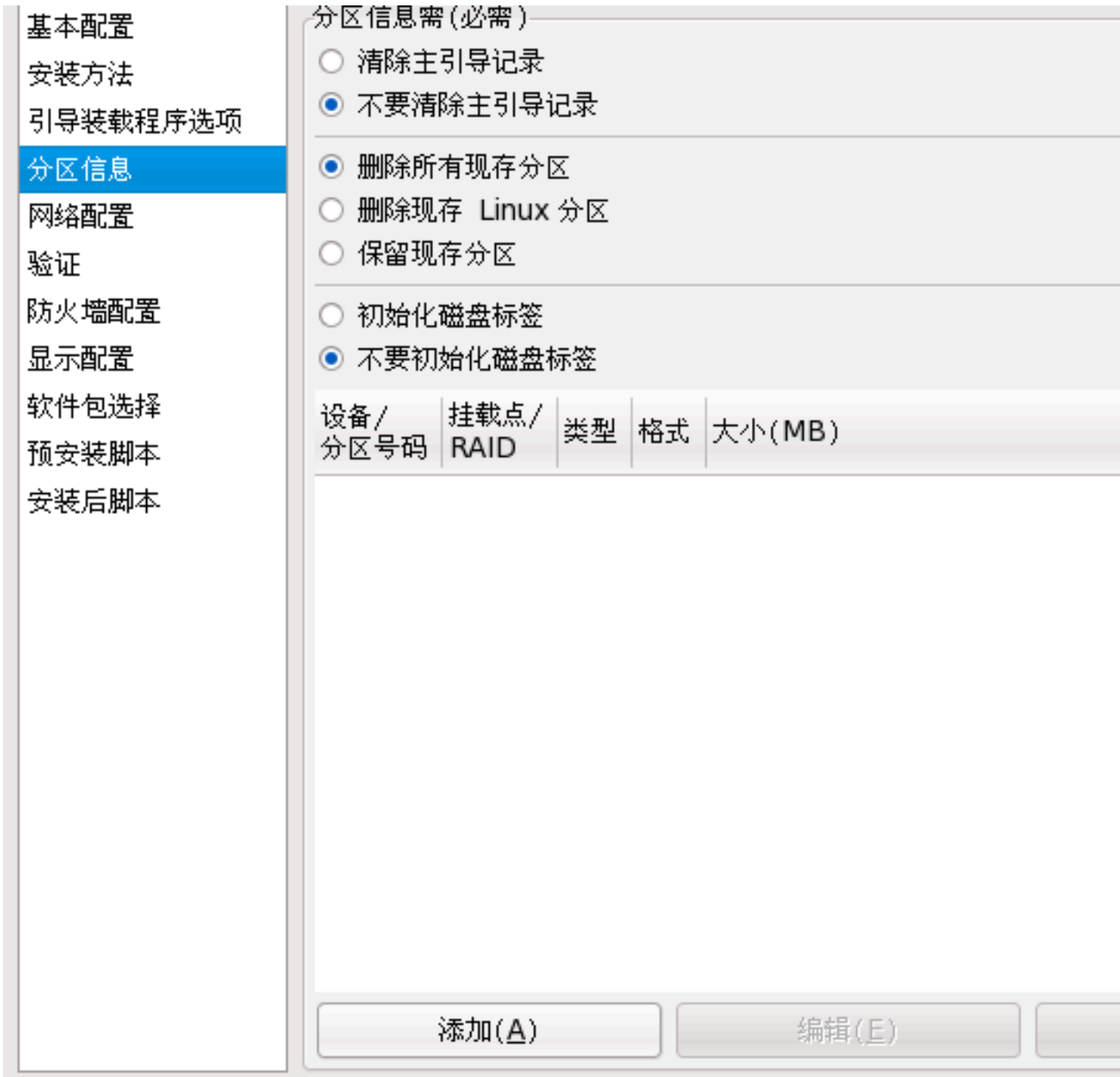


图 14.4. 分区信息

选择是否要清除主引导记录（MBR）。你还可以选择删除所有分区、删除所有现存的 Linux 分区、或保留现存分区。

如果你正在崭新的硬盘上安装系统，要根据系统体系结构来初始化磁盘标签（如 x86 的 msdos 和 Itanium 的 gpt），选择「初始化磁盘标签」。





### 注意

虽然 `anaconda` 和 `kickstart` 支持逻辑卷管理 (Logical Volume Management, LVM)，目前还没有用「Kickstart 配置程序」配置它的机制。

#### 14.4.1. 创建分区

要创建一个分区，点击「添加」按钮。[14.5](#) “ ” 里展示的「分区选项」窗口将出现。为新分区选择挂载点、文件系统类型和分区大小。你还可以选择下列的可选选项：

在「其他大小选项」部分，选择“固定大小”、“最大限度”或者“使用磁盘上的所有剩余空间”。如果选择了 `swap` 作为文件系统的类型，你可以不指定分区大小而让安装程序根据推荐值创建交换分区。

强制分区被创建为主分区。

在指定硬盘驱动器上创建分区。例如，在第一个 IDE 硬盘 (`/dev/hda`) 上创建分区，指定 `hda` 为驱动器。不要在驱动器名字里包括 `/dev`。

使用现存的分区。例如，在第一个 IDE 硬盘 (`/dev/hda1`) 上的第一个分区上建立分区。指定 `hda1` 为分区。不要在分区名里包括 `/dev`。

把分区格式化为选定的文件系统类型。

挂载点：

文件系统类型： ext3

大小(MB)： 1

其它大小选项

固定大小

使用空间的最大限度为(MB)： 1

使用磁盘上全部未用空间

使用不推荐的交换区大小

强制为主分区 (asprimary)

格式化分区

在指定的驱动器上分区 (ondisk)

驱动器： (譬如：hda 或 sdc)

使用现存分区 (onpart)

分区： (譬如：hda1 或 sdc3)

取消(C) 确定(O)

图 14.5. 创建分区

要编辑现有的分区，从列表里选择分区并点击「编辑」按钮。相同的「分区选项」窗口将出现，这与 14.5 “ ” 里显示的当你添加分区时的窗口相同，除了它反映了所选择的分区的值。修改分区的选项并点击「确认」。

要删除现有的分区，从列表里选择分区然后点击「删除」按钮。

#### 14.4.1.1. 创建软件 RAID 分区

要创建软件 RAID 分区，使用以下步骤：

1. 点击「RAID」按钮。
2. 选择「创建 software RAID 分区」。

3. 如前面所描述的一样来配置，除了选择文件系统为「software RAID」。而且，你必须指定创建分区使用的硬盘驱动器或者是现有的分区。

挂载点：

文件系统类型： 软件 RAID

大小(MB)： 1

其它大小选项

固定大小

使用空间的最大限度为(MB)： 1

使用磁盘上全部未用空间

使用不推荐的交换区大小

强制为主分区 (asprimary)

格式化分区

在指定的驱动器上分区 (ondisk)

驱动器： (例如：hda 或 sdc)

使用现存分区 (onpart)

分区： (例如：hda1 或 sdc3)

取消(C) 确定(O)

图 14.6. 创建软件 RAID 分区

重复这些步骤来为你的 RAID 设置创建所需的分区。不是你所有的分区都一定要是 RAID 分区。

创建了构成 RAID 设备所需的所有分区后，遵循以下步骤：

1. 点击「RAID」按钮。
2. 选择「创建 RAID 设备」。
3. 选择挂载点、文件系统类型、RAID 设备名称、RAID 级别、RAID 成员、软件 RAID 设备的备件数量、以及是否要格式化 RAID 设备。

挂载点：

文件系统类型：

RAID 设备：

RAID 级别：

RAID 成员

- raid.01
- raid.02

备件数量：

格式化 RAID 设备

图 14.7. 创建软件 RAID 设备

4. 点击「确定」来在列表里添加设备。

## 14.5. Network Configuration

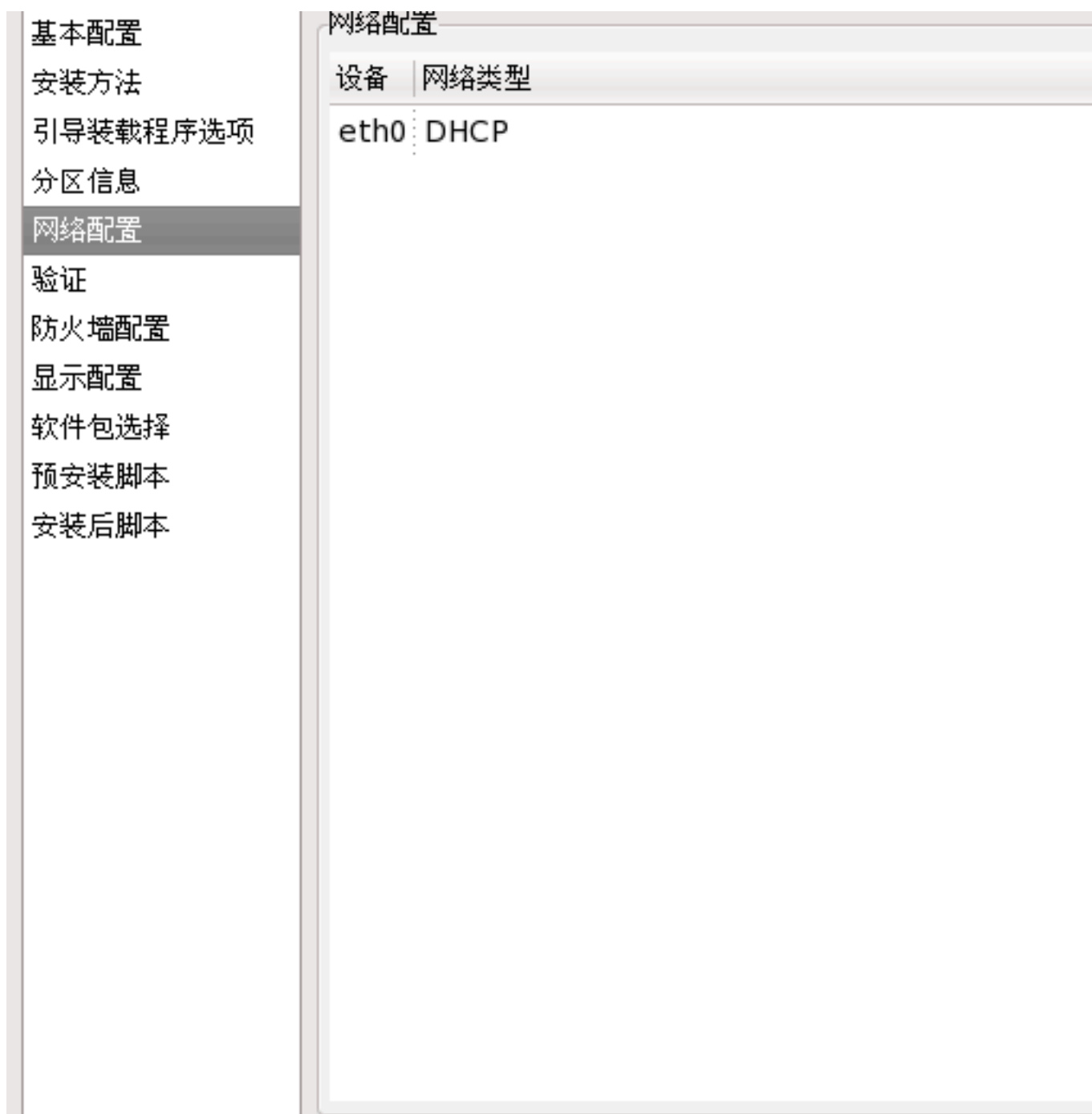


图 14.8. Network Configuration

如果用 kickstart 安装的系统没有以太网卡，不要在「网络配置」页进行配置。

Networking is only required if you choose a networking-based installation method (NFS, FTP, or HTTP). Networking can always be configured after installation with the Network Administration Tool (system-config-network). Refer to the Red Hat Enterprise Linux Deployment Guide for details.

对于系统里的每个以太网卡，点击「添加网络设备」并选择网络设备和类型。选择「eth0」来配置第一个以太网卡，「eth1」为第二个以太网卡，等等。

### 14.6. 验证

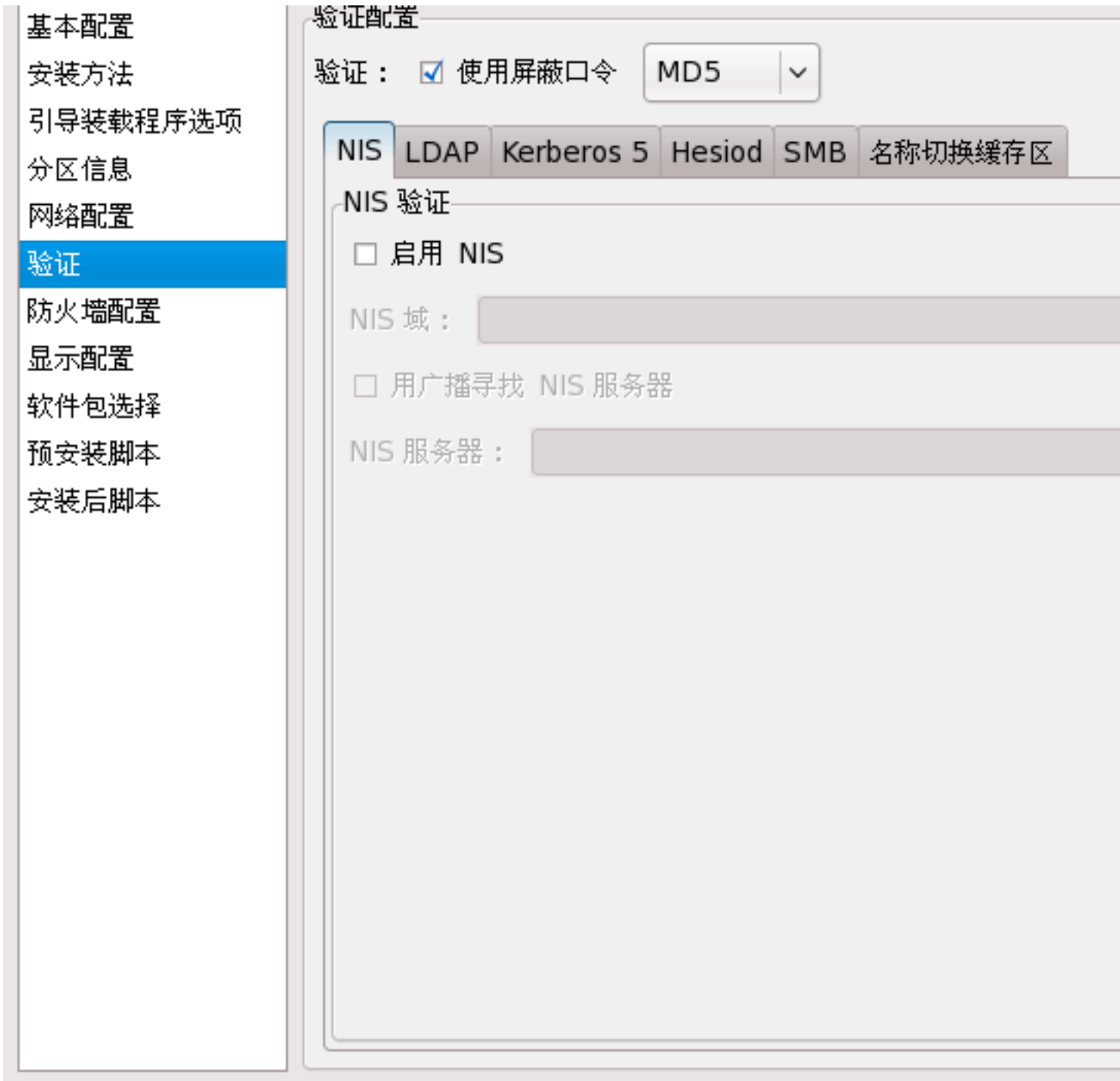


图 14.9. 验证

在「验证」部分，选择是否为用户密码使用影子密码和 MD5 加密。这些选项是我们极力推荐的且是缺省选项。

「验证配置」选项允许你配置下面的验证方法：

---

NIS

LDAP

Kerberos 5

Hesiod

SMB

名称切换缓存区

These methods are not enabled by default. To enable one or more of these methods, click the appropriate tab, click the checkbox next to Enable, and enter the appropriate information for the authentication method. Refer to the Red Hat Enterprise Linux Deployment Guide for more information about the options.

## 14.7. 防火墙配置

「防火墙配置」窗口和安装程序里的以及「安全级别设置工具」都很相似。

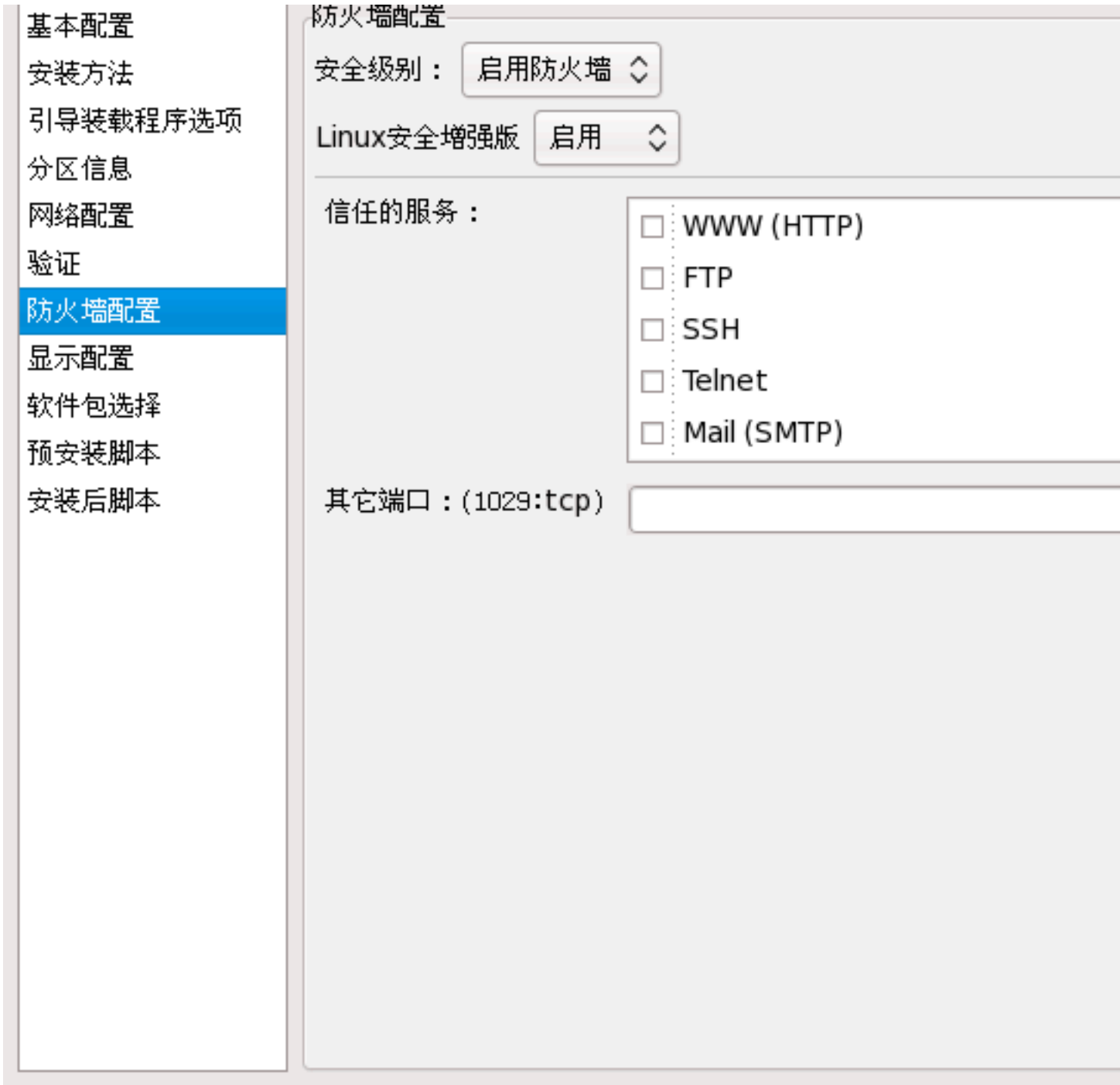


图 14.10. 防火墙配置

如果选择了「禁用防火墙」，系统将允许对任何服务和端口的访问。与系统的任何连接都不会被拒绝。

选择「启用防火墙」来配置系统拒绝不是答复输出请求如 DNS 答复或 DHCP 请求的进入连接。如果需要使用在这个机器上运行的服务，你可以选择允许指定的服务穿过防火墙。

只有在「网络配置」里配置的设备才被列为可用的「信任的设备」。从列表里的设备进来的连接都会被系统接受。例如，如果 eth1 只接受内部系统的连接的话，你可以允许经过它进来的连接。

如果服务在「信任的服务」列表中，这个服务的连接会被系统接受并处理。



---

你可以允许到这里没有列出的其它端口的访问，方法是在「其它端口」字段内把它们列出。格式为：端口:协议。例如，如果你想允许 IMAP 通过你的防火墙，你可以指定 `imap:tcp`。你还可以具体指定端口号码，要允许 UDP 分组在端口 1234 通过防火墙，输入 `1234:udp`。要指定多个端口，可以用逗号将它们隔开。

### 14.7.1. SELinux 配置

Kickstart 可以把 SELinux 设置为 `enforcing`、`permissive` 或 `disabled` 模式。此时不能进行微调配置。

## 14.8. 显示配置

If you are installing the X Window System, you can configure it during the kickstart installation by checking the Configure the X Window System option on the Display Configuration window as shown in [14.11 “X Configuration”](#). If this option is not chosen, the X configuration options are disabled and the `skipx` option is written to the kickstart file.

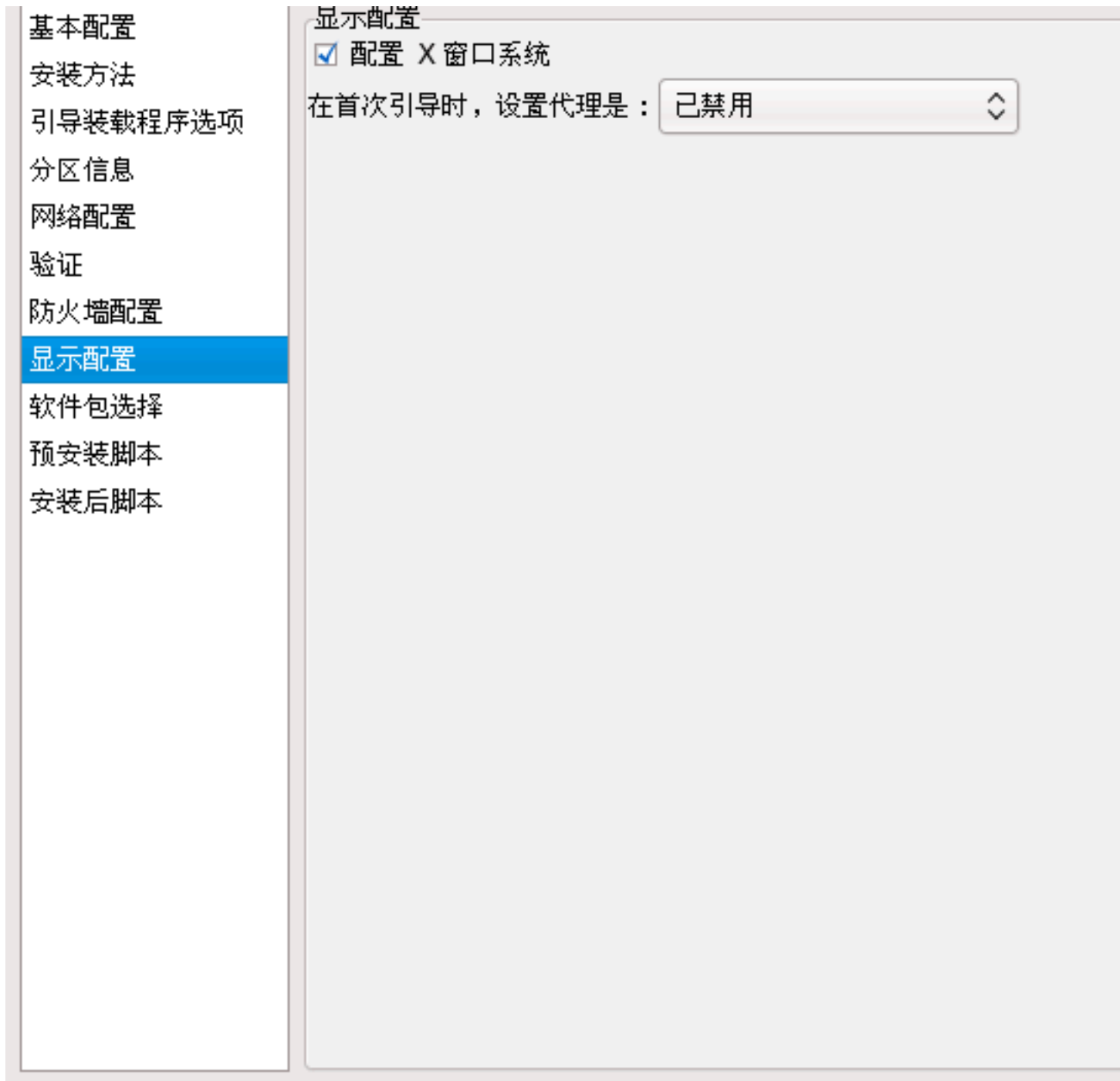


图 14.11. X Configuration

选择是否在系统第一次重启时启动「设置代理」。这个选项缺省是禁用的，但你可以修改为“启用”或“在重新配置模式下启用”。重新配置模式启用语言、鼠标、键盘、根密码、安全级别、时区和除了缺省配置之外的网络配置。

## 14.9. Package Selection

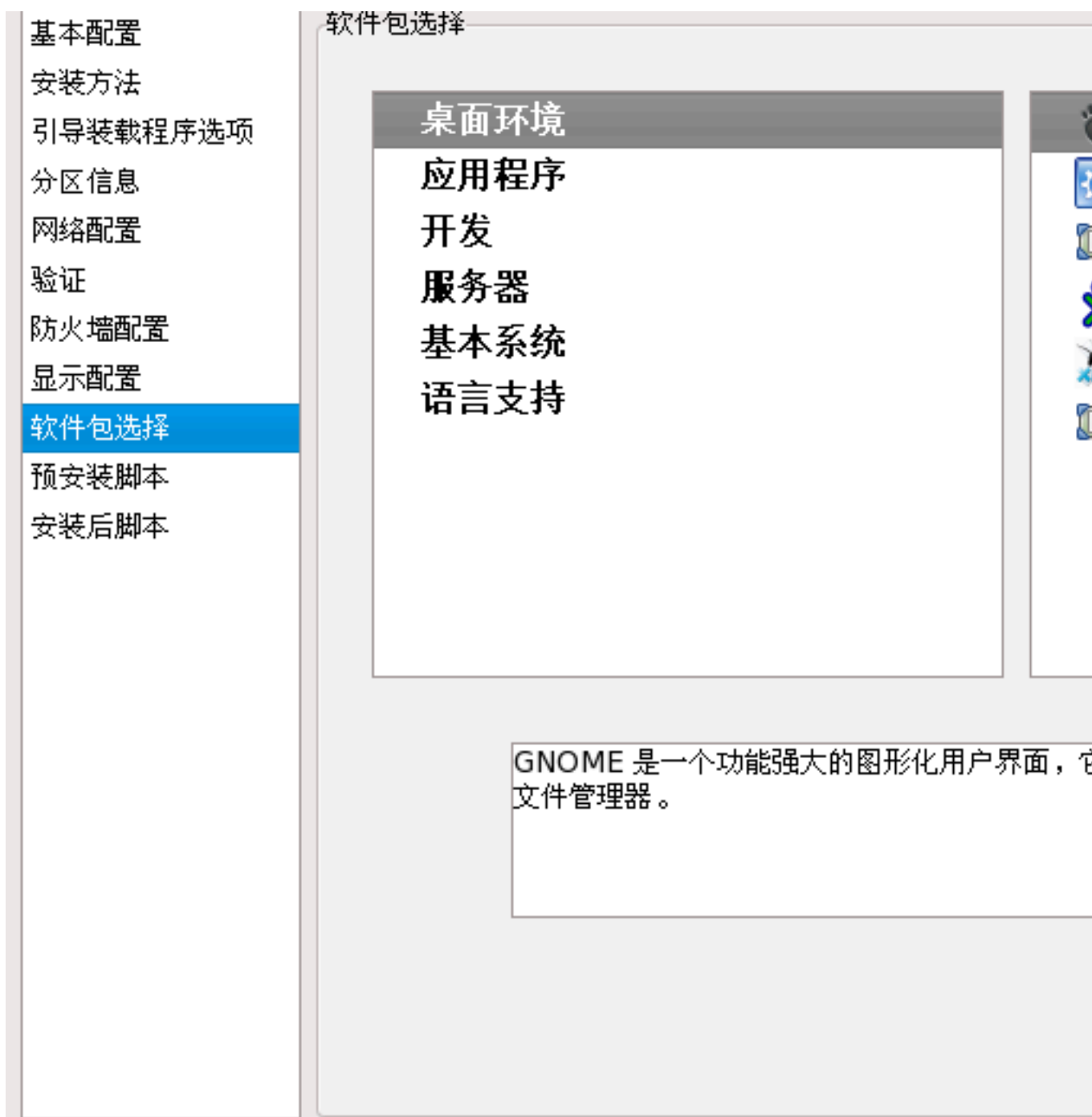


图 14.12. Package Selection

「软件包选择」窗口允许你选择安装哪些软件包。

软件包的解析将自动进行。

目前，「Kickstart 配置程序」不允许你选择单个的软件包。要安装单个的软件包，你可以存盘后在 kickstart 文件的 `%packages` 部分进行修改。详情请参考 [13.5 “Package Selection”](#)。

## 14.10. 预安装脚本

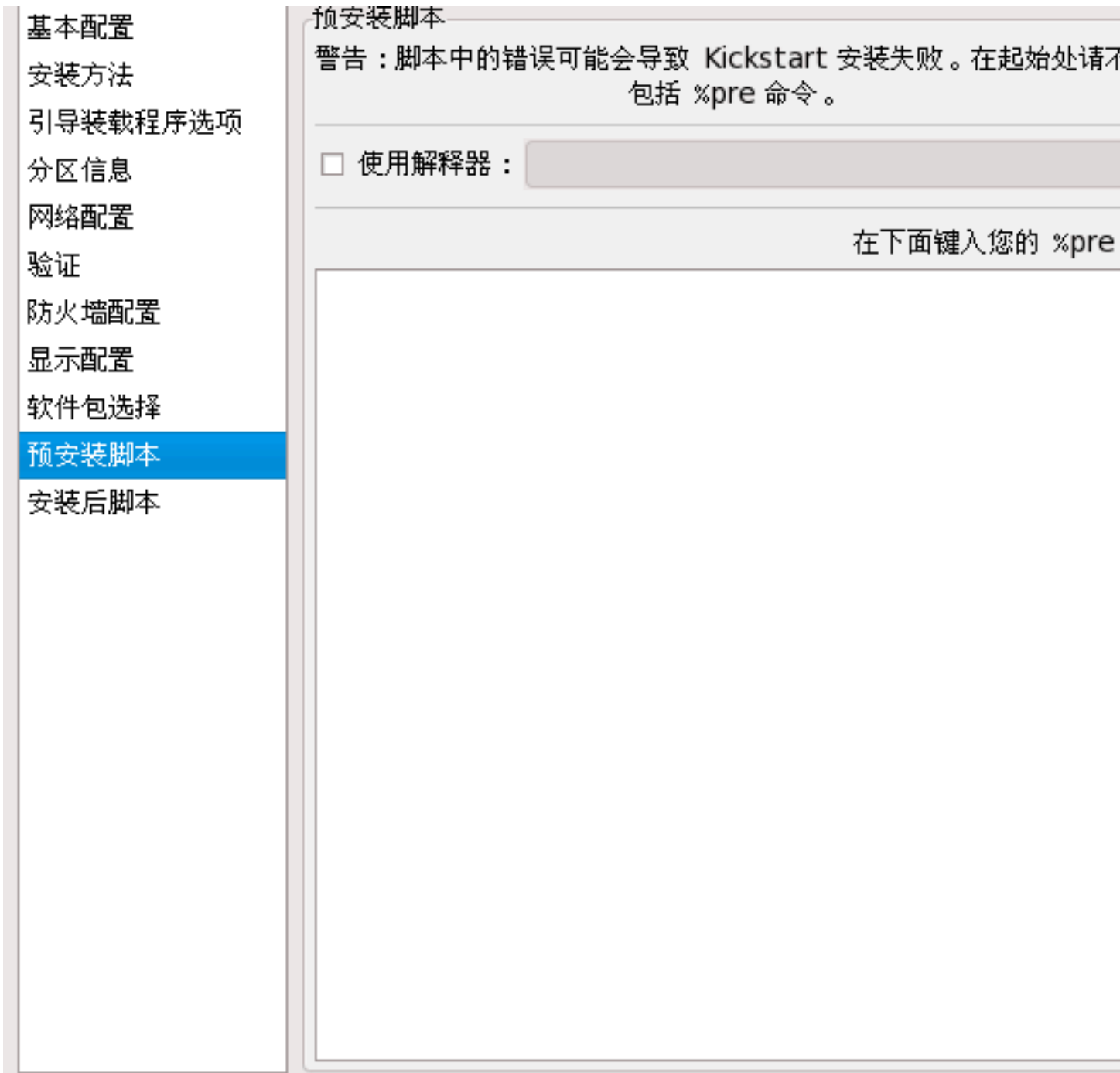


图 14.13. 预安装脚本

你可以添加系统在解析 kickstart 文件后，安装开始前要运行的命令。如果你在 kickstart 文件中配置了网络，联网在这部分被处理前会被启用。如果你想包括一个预安装脚本，在文本区域内输入它。

要指定执行脚本的脚本语言，选中「使用解释器」选项并在文本框里输入解释器。例如，对于 Python 脚本可以指定 `/usr/bin/python2.4`。这个选项相当于在 kickstart 文件里使用 `%pre --interpreter /usr/bin/python2.4`。

在预安装环境里可用的很多命令都由 busybox 的一个叫 busybox-anaconda 的版本提供。Busybox 提供的命令只提供最常用的功能，而不是全部。下面的列表包括了 busybox 提供的命令：

addgroup, adduser, adjtimex, ar, arping, ash, awk, basename, bbconfig, bunzip2, busybox, bzcat, cal, cat, catv, chattr, chgrp, chmod, chown, chroot, chvt, cksum, clear, cmp, comm, cp, cpio, crond, crontab, cut, date, dc, dd, dealloctv, delgroup, deluser, devfsd, df, diff, dirname, dmesg, dnsd, dos2unix, dpkg, dpkg-deb, du, dumpkmap, dumpleases, e2fsck, e2label, echo, ed, egrep, eject, env, ether-wake, expr, fakeidentd, false, fbset, fdflush, fdformat, fdisk, fgrep, find, findfs, fold, free, freeramdisk, fsck, fsck.ext2, fsck.ext3, fsck.ext4, fsck.minix, ftpget, ftpput, fuser, getopt, getty, grep, gunzip, gzip, hdparm, head, hexdump, hostid, hostname, httpd, hush, hwclock, id, ifconfig, ifdown, ifup, inetd, insmod, install, ip, ipaddr, ipcalc, ipcrm, ipcs, iplink, iproute, iptunnel, kill, killall, lash, last, length, less, linux32, linux64, ln, load\_policy, loadfont, loadkmap, login, logname, losetup, ls, lsattr, lsmod, lzmacat, makedevs, md5sum, mdev, msg, mkdir, mke2fs, mkfifo, mkfs.ext2, mkfs.ext3, mkfs.ext4, mkfs.minix, mknod, mkswap, mktemp, modprobe, more, mount, mountpoint, msh, mt, mv, nameif, nc, netstat, nice, nohup, nslookup, od, openvt, passwd, patch, pidof, ping, ping6, pipe\_progress, pivot\_root, printenv, printf, ps, pwd, rdate, readlink, readprofile, realpath, renice, reset, rm, rmdir, rmmount, route, rpm, rpm2cpio, run-parts, runlevel, rx, sed, seq, setarch, setconsole, setkeycodes, setlogcons, setsid, sh, sha1sum, sleep, sort, start-stop-daemon, stat, strings, stty, su, sulogin, sum, swapoff, swapon, switch\_root, sync, sysctl, tail, tar, tee, telnet, telnetd, test, tftp, time, top, touch, tr, traceroute, true, tty, tune2fs, udhcp, udhcpd, umount, uname, uncompress, uniq, unix2dos, unlzma, unzip, uptime, usleep, uudecode, uuencode, vconfig, vi, vlock, watch, watchdog, wc, wget, which, who, whoami, xargs, yes, zcat, zcip

For a description of any of these commands, run:

```
busybox command --help
```

In addition to the aforementioned commands, the following commands are provided in their full featured versions:

anaconda, bash, bzip2, jmacs, ftp, head, joe, kudzu-probe, list-harddrives, loadkeys, mtools, mbchk, mtools, mini-wm, mtools, jpico, pump, python, python2.4, raidstart, raidstop, rcp, rlogin, rsync, setxkbmap, sftp, shred, ssh, syslinux, syslogd, tac, termidx, vncconfig, vncpasswd, xkbcomp, Xorg, Xvnc, zcat



### Warning

不要输入“%pre”，系统会为你自动添加。



### 注意

预安装脚本是在挂载安装介质以及装载第二阶段引导装载程序后运行的。因此，不可能在预安装脚本里改变安装介质。

## 14.11. 安装后脚本



图 14.14. 安装后脚本

你还可以添加系统在安装结束后要执行的命令。如果你在 `kickstart` 文件中正确地配置了网络，联网就会被启用，该脚本中就可以包含访问网络资源的命令。如果你想包括一个安装后脚本，在文本区域内输入它。



### Warning

不要输入“%post”，系统会为你自动添加。

例如，要改变新安装系统的欢迎信息（message of the day），在 %post 部分加入下面的命令：

```
echo "Hackers will be punished!" > /etc/motd
```



### Note

更多示例，请参考 [13.7.1](#) “ ”。

## 14.11.1. chroot 环境

要在 chroot 环境之外运行安装后脚本，在「安装后脚本」窗口顶部点击选项后的复选框。这和在 %post 部分使用 `--nochroot` 命令是一样。

要在“安装后脚本”部分，但在 chroot 环境之外修改新安装的系统，你必须使用基于 `/mnt/sysimage/` 的目录名。

例如，如果你选择「在 chroot 环境之外运行」，前面的例子必须改成下面这样：

```
echo "Hackers will be punished!" > /mnt/sysimage/etc/motd
```

## 14.11.2. 使用解释器

要指定执行脚本的脚本语言，选择「使用解释器」并在后面的文本框里输入解释器。例如，对于 Python 脚本可以指定 `/usr/bin/python2.2`。这个选项相当于在 kickstart 文件里使用 `%post --interpreter /usr/bin/python2.2`。

## 14.12. 保存文件

在你完成所有的 kickstart 选项之后，如果要检查 kickstart 文件的内容，从下拉菜单里选择「文件」=>「预览」。

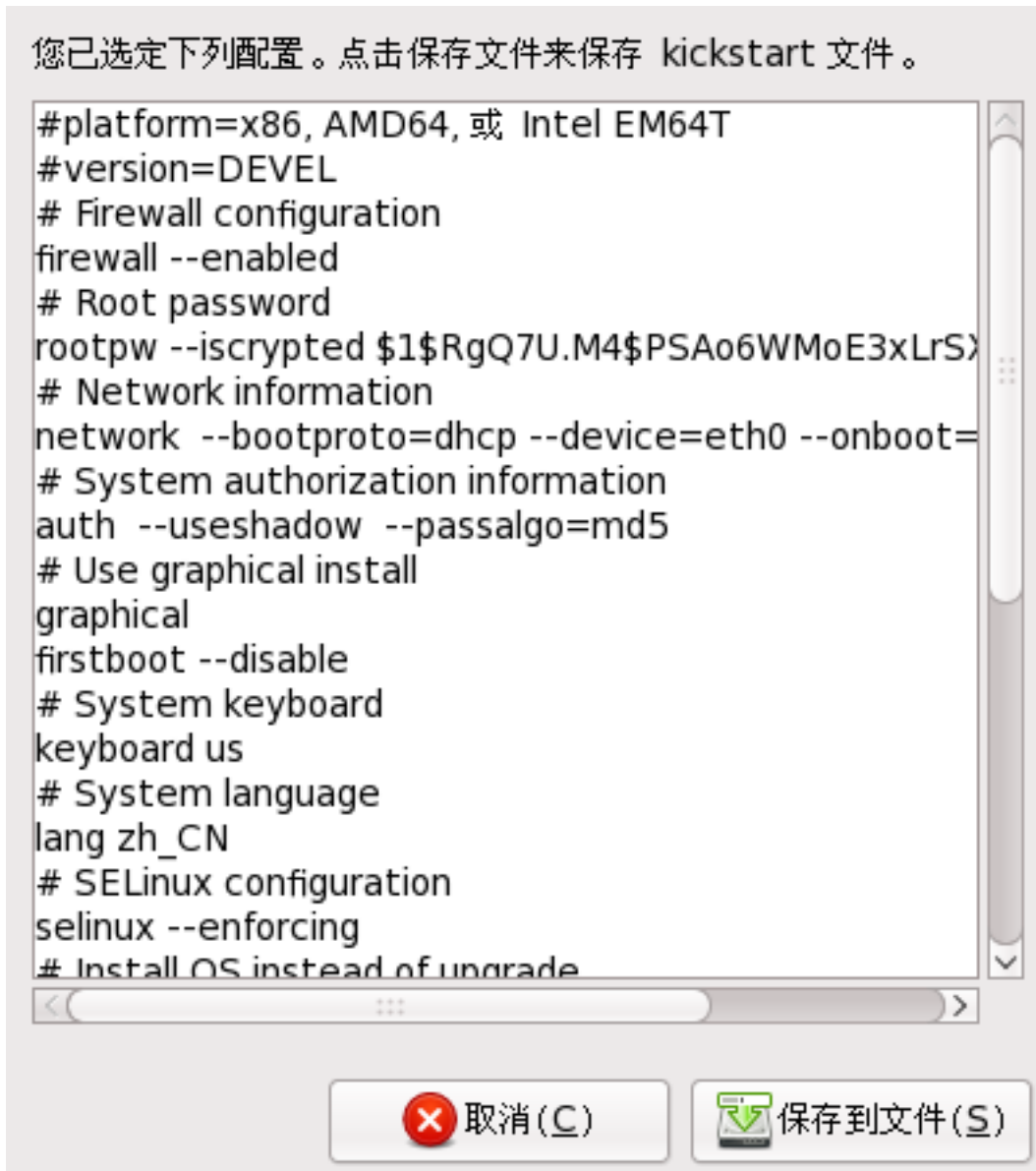


图 14.15. 预览

要保存 kickstart 文件，在预览窗口里点击「保存到文件」。要直接保存而不预览文件，选择「文件」=>「保存文件」并按 Ctrl+S。然后一个对话框将出现，选择要保存的文件位置。

在保存文件后，你可以参考 [13.10 “kickstart”](#) 里关于怎样启动 kickstart 安装的信息。



---

## 部分 IV. After installation

This part of the *Fedora Installation Guide* covers finalizing the installation, as well as some installation-related tasks that you might perform at some time in the future. These include:

using a Fedora installation disk to rescue a damaged system.

upgrading to a new version of Fedora.

removing Fedora from your computer.

---

---

---


# Firstboot

Firstboot launches the first time that you start a new Fedora system. Use Firstboot to configure the system for use before you log in.



图 15.1. Firstboot welcome screen

Select Forward to start the Firstboot.

 **需要图形界面**  
Firstboot requires a graphical interface. If you did not install one, or if Fedora has trouble starting it, you may see a slightly different setup screen.

## 15.1. 许可协议

This screen displays the overall licensing terms for Fedora. Each software package in Fedora is covered by its own license. All licensing guidelines for Fedora are located at <http://fedoraproject.org/wiki/Legal/Licenses>.

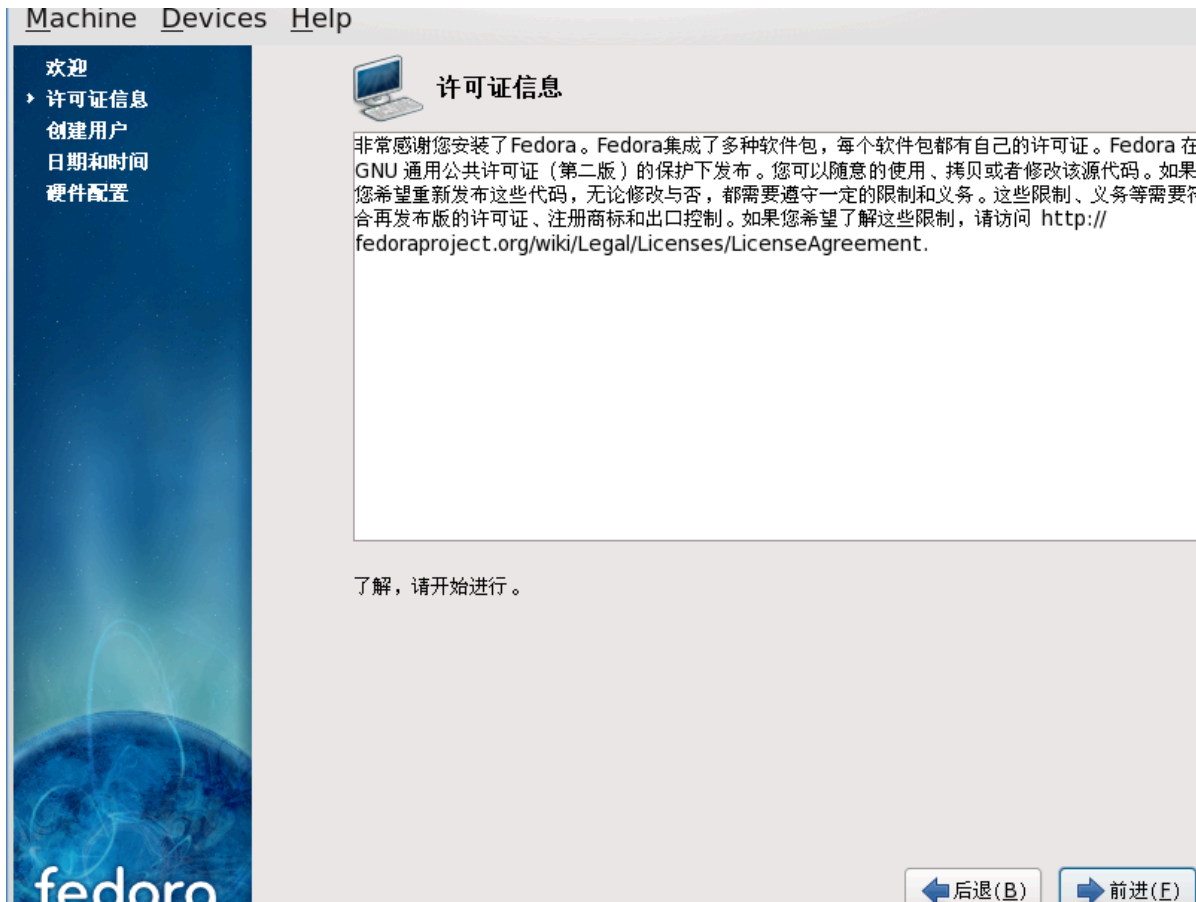


图 15.2. Firstboot license screen

If you agree to the terms of the licence, select Forward.


## 15.2. 系统用户

在这个屏幕，为您自己创建一个用户帐户。平时使用这个帐户来登录您的 Fedora 系统，尽量不要用 root 帐户。



图 15.3. Firstboot create user screen

Enter a user name and your full name, and then enter your chosen password. Type your password once more in the Confirm Password box to ensure that it is correct. Refer to [7.17 “ ”](#) for guidelines on selecting a secure password.



**生成另外的用户帐户**  
To add additional user accounts to your system after the installation is complete, choose System → Administration → Users & Groups.

要将 Fedora 配置为使用网络服务来进行认证或取得用户信息，选择 使用网络登录.....。

## 15.3. 日期和时间


If your system does not have Internet access or a network time server, manually set the date and time for your system on this screen. Otherwise, use *NTP* (Network Time Protocol) servers to maintain the accuracy of the clock. NTP provides time synchronization service to computers on the same network. The Internet contains many computers that offer public NTP services.

最初的屏幕允许您手动设置日期和时间。



图 15.4. Firstboot date and time screen

选择 Network Time Protocol(网络时间协议) 来配置您的系统使用 NTP 服务。

 **设置时钟**  
To change these settings later, choose System → Administration → Date & Time.

要配置您的系统使用网络时间服务器，选择 Enable Network Time Protocol(允许网络时间协议) 选项。这个选项禁止了对 Date and Time(日期和时间) 的设置，启用了屏幕上其他设置。



图 15.5. Firstboot Network Time Protocol screen

默认情况下，Fedora 配置为使用独立的三组或者三个 *pools* 时间服务器，时间服务器 *pool* 会生成冗余，如果其中一个无法使用，您的系统还会与另外的服务器同步。

要使用附加时间服务器，选择 Add(增加)，然后在方格里键入服务器的 DNS 名称。要从列表里移除一个服务器或服务器库，选择这个名字并点击 Delete(删除)。

如果您的机器总是通过有线连接连接到互联网，请选择 在启动服务前同步系统时钟 选项。这个选项可能会在启动后导致短暂迟滞，但会确保您系统时间的正确，即使时钟在引导时有严重错误。



**笔记本电脑和 NTP**  
在间或使用无线网络的笔记本电脑中请不要使用此选项。

如果您的计算机中，硬件时钟非常不准确，可以将本地时间源彻底关掉。要关闭本地时间源，选择 Show advanced options(显示高级选项) 然后去掉 Use Local Time Source(用本地时间源) 选项。如果您关闭您的本地时间源，NTP 服务器的优先级将比内部时钟更高。

如果您启用了 启用 NTP 广播 高级选项，Fedora 将尝试自动定位网络中的时间服务器。

### 15.4. 硬件侧写

Firstboot displays a screen that allows you to submit your hardware information anonymously to the Fedora Project. Developers use these hardware details to guide further support efforts. You can read more about this project and its development at <http://smolts.org/>.

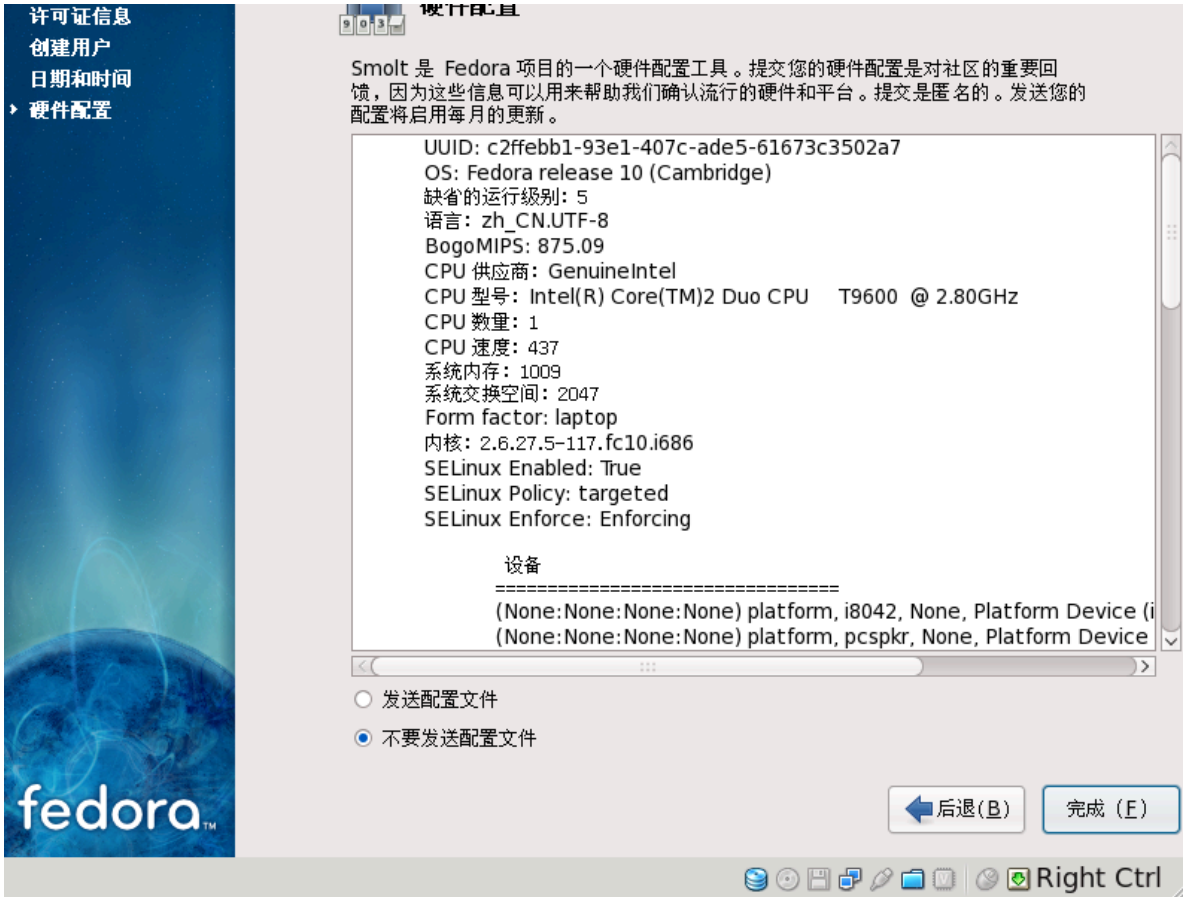


图 15.6. Firstboot hardware profile screen

To opt in to this important work, select Send Profile. If you choose not to submit any profile data, do not change the default. Select Finish to continue to the login screen.

 **更新您的系统**  
为保证您系统的安全性，在安装结束后运行一次软件包更新。 16 中讲述了如何更新您的 Fedora 系统。



## 下一步做什么

Fedora 为您提供了一个完整的操作系统和多方位的功能，并且拥有庞大的社区支持。

### 16.1. 更新您的系统

Fedora 项目在 Fedora 每个版本的支持周期中，会提供更新的软件包。更新的软件包拥有新的功能，更加可靠，解决 bug，消除安全隐患。要保证您的系统安全，在安装过程结束后就进行更新。您应当经常更新，当有安全通告发出时更应当尽快更新。参考 [16.4 “ Fedora ”](#) 来获取 Fedora 通告服务的信息。

更新 `applet` 会提醒您在其可用时更新您的系统。这个 `applet` 是 Fedora 默认安装的。它会在所有配置的存储库中检查软件更新，并作为后台服务运行。如果有任何更新，它就会在桌面生成一个通知信息，您可用点击该信息来更新您系统的软件。

To update your system with the latest packages manually, use Update System:

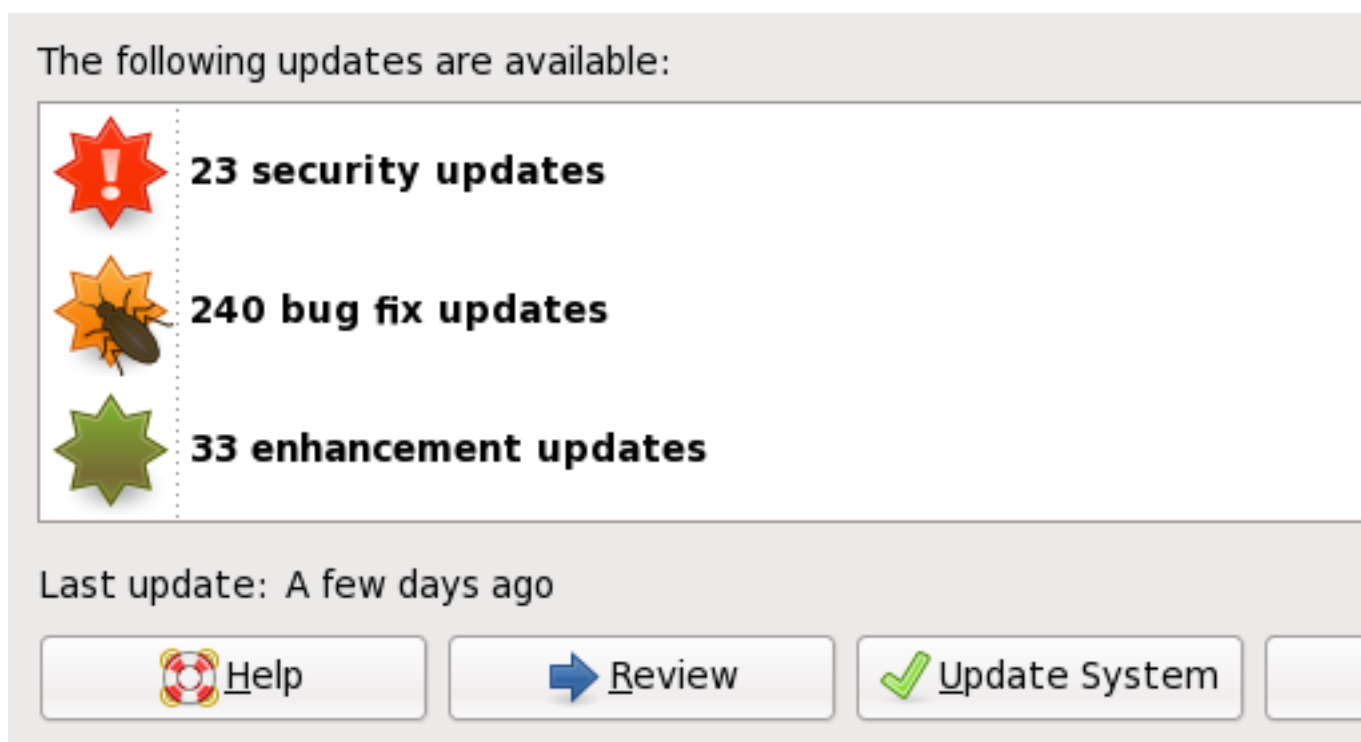


图 16.1. Updating your system

1. Choose System → Administration → Update System.
2. To review the list of updated packages, select Review.
3. Click Update System to begin the update process.
4. 如果一个或多个更新需要系统重新引导，更新过程将显示一个选项为 `现在重新引导` 的对话框。选择这个选项来立刻重启系统，或是 `取消` 在方便的时候重新引导。
5. If a reboot is not required the update will conclude with a dialog that indicates that the System Update Completed and all selected updates have been successfully installed as well as a button to Close

## Update System

To update packages from the command-line, use the `yum` utility. Type this command to begin a full update of your system with `yum`:

```
su -c 'yum update'
```

Enter the root password when prompted.

Refer to <http://docs.fedoraproject.org/yum/> for more information on `yum`.



### 需要网络连接

在运行 Update Software 工具或者 `yum` 程序前，请确定您的系统有活跃的网络连接。该更新进程会从服务器的网络中下载信息和软件包。

If your Fedora system has a permanent network connection, you may choose to enable daily system updates. To enable automatic updates, follow the instructions on the webpage <http://docs.fedoraproject.org/yum/sn-updating-your-system.html>.

## 16.2. 完成升级



### 建议进行系统更新

执行升级并重启系统后，您应该还要执行手动系统更新。有关详情请参考 [16.1](#) “ ”。

如果您选择从之前的发行本进行升级，而不是重新安装，您可能想要检查软件包组的不同。 [7.14.2](#) “ ” 建议您为原始系统创建一个软件包列表。您现在可以使用那个列表决定如何让您的新系统接近原始系统。

大都是软件存储库配置是保存在以 `release` 结尾的软件包中。检查旧的软件包列表来查看已经安装的存储库：

```
awk '{print $1}' ~/old-pkglist.txt | grep 'release$'
```

如果需要，在互联网的软件存储库软件包原始资源搜索并安装这些软件包。按照原始网站的说明安装您的 Fedora 系统中 `yum` 和其它软件管理工具使用的存储库配置软件包。

然后运行以下命令列出其它缺少的软件软件包：

```
awk '{print $1}' ~/old-pkglist.txt | sort | uniq > ~/old-pkgnames.txt
rpm -qa --qf '%{NAME}\n' | sort | uniq > ~/new-pkgnames.txt
diff -u ~/old-pkgnames.txt ~/new-pkgnames.txt | grep '^-' | sed 's/^-//' > /tmp/pkgs-to-install.txt
```

现在将 `/tmp/pkgs-to-install.txt` 文件与 `yum` 命令一同使用来恢复大多数或者所有旧的软件：

```
su -c 'yum install `cat /tmp/pkgs-to-install.txt`'
```



### 缺少的软件

由于不同 Fedora 发行本软件包数量的不同，这种方法有可能无法保存您系统中的所有软件。您可以使用上述常规方法再次比较您系统中的软件，并对发现的问题进行及时修改。

## 16.3. 切换到图形登录

如果您使用的是文本登录进行安装并希望切换到图形登录，请使用以下步骤。

1. 用户切换到 root 帐户：

```
su -
```

在提示符后提供管理员密码。

2. 如果您还没有完成这些操作，请安装一个图形桌面环境。比如要安装 GNOME 桌面环境，请使用这个命令：

```
yum groupinstall "GNOME Desktop Environment"
```

这一步可能会花一些时间，因为您的 Fedora 系统要下载并安装附加软件。可能会要求您提供安装介质，这要看您的原始安装源是什么。

3. 请运行以下命令编辑 `/etc/inittab` 文件：

```
nano /etc/inittab
```

4. 找到包含 `initdefault` 文本的行。将数字 3 改为 5。
5. 按 `Ctrl+O` 将该文件写入磁盘，然后按 `Ctrl+X` 退出此程序。
6. 输入 `exit` 退出管理员帐户。

如果需要，您可以使用 `reboot` 命令重启系统。您的系统将重新启动，并显示图形登录。

如果您遇到有关图形登录的问题，请参考列在 [1.2](#) “ ” 中的帮助资源之一。

## 16.4. 订阅 Fedora 通告和新闻

要获取软件包更新信息，请订阅通告邮件列表或 RSS。

Fedora 项目通告邮件列表

<https://www.redhat.com/mailman/listinfo/fedora-announce-list>

Fedora 项目 RSS 文件

<http://fedoraproject.org/infofeed/>

通告邮件列表还为您提供 Fedora 项目以及 Fedora 社区新闻。



### 安全通告

标题中带有关键字 `[SECURITY]` 的通告标识了解决安全隐患的软件包更新。

## 16.5. 查找文档和支持

Members of the Fedora community provide support through mailing lists, Web forums and Linux User Groups (LUGs) across the world.

The Web site for the formally endorsed forums is <http://forums.fedoraforum.org/>.

下列这些资源提供一些 Fedora 方方面面的信息:

Fedora 项目网站中的 FAQ

<http://fedoraproject.org/wiki/FAQ/>

来自 Fedora 项目网站中的可用文档

<http://docs.fedoraproject.org/>

Linux 文档计划 (LDP)

<http://www.tldp.org/>

红帽企业版 Linux 文档, 许多地方也适用于 Fedora

<http://www.redhat.com/docs/manuals/enterprise/>

Many other organizations and individuals also provide tutorials and HOWTOs for Fedora on their Web sites. You can locate information on any topic by using Google's Linux search site, located at <http://www.google.com/linux>.

## 16.6. 加入 Fedora 社区

Fedora 项目是由个人志愿者来推动的。社区的成员向其他用户提供支持和文档, 通过测试来帮助改进 Fedora 中的软件, 与红帽公司的程序员一起, 开发新的软件。这些努力的成果可让所有人受益。

要改变自己, 从这里开始:

<http://join.fedoraproject.org/>

# 基本系统恢复

虽说车到山前必有路，问题出现时总会有相应的解决办法，但是这些解决办法却要求你理解并熟悉系统。本章描述了如何引导救援模式和单用户模式，你可以在这些模式中使用你的知识和能力来修复系统。

## 17.1. 常见问题

你可能会鉴于以下几个原因而需要引导一种恢复模式：

You are unable to boot normally into Fedora (runlevel 3 or 5).

遇到了硬件或软件问题，并且想把几个重要的文件从系统硬盘中取出。

忘记了根口令。

### 17.1.1. Unable to Boot into Fedora

This problem is often caused by the installation of another operating system after you have installed Fedora. Some other operating systems assume that you have no other operating system(s) on your computer. They overwrite the Master Boot Record (MBR) that originally contained the GRUB boot loader. If the boot loader is overwritten in this manner, you cannot boot Fedora unless you can get into rescue mode and reconfigure the boot loader.

另一个常见问题出现在使用分区工具来重划分区大小或在安装后从空闲空间中创建新分区从而改变了分区的顺序之后。如果你的 / 分区的分区号码改变了，引导装载程序将无法找到它来挂载这个分区。要解决这个问题，引导救援模式，若使用 GRUB，修改 `/boot/grub/grub.conf` 文件。

关于怎样在救援模式里重新安装 GRUB 引导装载程序，请参考 [17.2.1](#) “ ”。

### 17.1.2. 硬件或软件问题

This category includes a wide variety of different situations. Two examples include failing hard drives and specifying an invalid root device or kernel in the boot loader configuration file. If either of these occur, you might not be able to reboot into Fedora. However, if you boot into one of the system recovery modes, you might be able to resolve the problem or at least get copies of your most important files.

### 17.1.3. Root Password

如果你忘记了根口令该怎么办？要把它重设为另一个口令，引导救援模式或单用户模式，并使用 `passwd` 命令来重设根口令。

## 17.2. 引导救援模式

Rescue mode provides the ability to boot a small Fedora environment entirely from CD-ROM, or some other boot method, instead of the system's hard drive.

As the name implies, rescue mode is provided to rescue you from something. During normal operation, your Fedora system uses files located on your system's hard drive to do everything — run programs, store your files, and more.

However, there may be times when you are unable to get Fedora running completely enough to access files on your system's hard drive. Using rescue mode, you can access the files stored on your system's hard drive, even if you cannot actually run Fedora from that hard drive.

要进入救援模式，你必须能够用下面方法中的一种来引导系统<sup>1</sup>：

By booting the system from an installation boot CD-ROM or DVD.

从其他安装引导介质，如 USB 闪存设备引导系统。

By booting the system from the Fedora CD-ROM #1 or DVD.

使用以上方法引导后，把 `rescue` 添加为内核参数。例如，对于 x86 系统，在安装引导提示下输入以下命令：

```
linux rescue
```

You are prompted to answer a few basic questions, including which language to use. It also prompts you to select where a valid rescue image is located. Select from Local CD-ROM, Hard Drive, NFS image, FTP, or HTTP. The location selected must contain a valid installation tree, and the installation tree must be for the same version of Fedora as the Fedora disk from which you booted. If you used a boot CD-ROM or other media to start rescue mode, the installation tree must be from the same tree from which the media was created. For more information about how to setup an installation tree on a hard drive, NFS server, FTP server, or HTTP server, refer to the earlier section of this guide.

如果你选择的救援映像不需要网络连接，你会被征询是否要建立网络连接。如果你想把文件备份到另一台计算机上或从共享网络位置上安装一些 PRM 软件包时，网络连接会很有用。

下面的信息将显示：

The rescue environment will now attempt to find your Linux installation and mount it under the directory /mnt/sysimage. You can then make any changes required to your system. If you want to proceed with this step choose 'Continue'. You can also choose to mount your file systems read-only instead of read-write by choosing 'Read-only'. If for some reason this process fails you can choose 'Skip' and this step will be skipped and you will go directly to a command shell.

如果你选择 `Continue`，它会试图把你的文件系统挂载到 `/mnt/sysimage` 目录下。如果它挂载分区失败，它会通知你。如果你选择 `Read-Only`，它会试图在 `/mnt/sysimage` 目录下挂载你的文件系统，但是挂载模式为只读。如果你选择 `Skip`，你的文件系统将不会被挂载。如果你认为你的文件系统已损坏，选择 `Skip`。

一旦你的系统进入了救援模式，在 VC（虚拟控制台）1 和 VC2（使用 `Ctrl-Alt-F1` 组合键来进入 VC1，`Ctrl-Alt-F2` 来进入 VC2）上会出现提示：

```
sh-3.00b#
```

如果你选择了 `Continue` 来自动挂载你的分区，并且它们被成功地挂载了，那么你就会进入单用户模式。

即便你的文件系统被挂载，救援模式中的默认根分区只不过是一个临时的根分区，而不是正常用户模式（运行级别3或5）中的文件系统根分区。如果你选择要挂载文件系统，并且它被成功地挂载了，你可以通过执行以下命令来把救援模式的根分区改变为你的文件系统的根分区：

```
chroot /mnt/sysimage
```

如果你需要运行 `rpm` 之类的命令，改变根分区就会很有用，因为这类命令要求你的根分区被挂载为 `/`。要退出 `chroot` 环境，键入 `exit`，你就会返回到提示。

---

<sup>1</sup> 请参阅本指南前面的部分里的细节。

如果你选择 **Skip**，你仍可以试图在救援模式中手工挂载分区或 LVM2 逻辑卷，方法是：创建一个目录，如，**/foo**，然后键入以下命令：

```
mount -t ext4 /dev/mapper/VolGroup00-LogVol02 /foo
```

In the above command, **/foo** is a directory that you have created and **/dev/mapper/VolGroup00-LogVol02** is the LVM2 logical volume you want to mount. If the partition is of type ext2 or ext3 replace ext4 with ext2 or ext3 respectively.

如果你不知道所有物理分区的名字，你可以使用以下命令来列举它们：

```
fdisk -l
```

如果你不知道所有 LVM2 物理卷、逻辑组或是逻辑卷的名称，使用以下命令来列举它们：

```
pvdisplay
```

```
vgdisplay
```

```
lvdisplay
```

在这个提示下，你可以运行许多有用的命令，例如：

ssh、scp 和 ping，查看网络是否被启动

dump 和 restore，用于带有磁带驱动器的用户

parted 和 fdisk，用来管理分区

rpm，用于安装或升级软件

joe 用于编辑配置文件



#### Note

如果你试图启动其它常用的编辑器，如 emacs、pico 或 vi，joe 编辑器仍会被启动。

### 17.2.1. 重新安装引导装载程序

在很多情况下，GRUB 引导装载程序可能被错误地删除、损坏或者被其他操作系统代替。

下面的步骤详细说明了怎样把 GRUB 重新安装在主引导分区（MBR）里：

从安装引导介质中引导系统。

在安装引导提示下键入 **linux rescue** 来进入救援环境。

键入 **chroot /mnt/sysimage** 来挂载根分区。

键入 **/sbin/grub-install /dev/hda** 来重新安装 GRUB 引导装载程序，这里的 **/dev/hda** 是 boot 分区。

检查 `/boot/grub/grub.conf` 文件，因为要控制其他的操作系统，GRUB 需要额外的条目。

重新启动系统。

### 17.3. 引导单用户模式

单用户模式的优越性之一是你不必使用引导光盘；不过，它仍旧给你提供了把文件系统挂载为只读模式或干脆不挂载这两种选择。

如果你的系统引导了，但是在引导后却不允许你登录，你可以试着使用单用户模式。

在单用户模式中，你的计算机引导至运行级别 1。本地文件系统被挂载，但是网络不会被激活。你会拥有一个可用的系统维护 shell。和救援模式不同，单用户模式会自动试图挂载你的文件系统。

。如果你的系统上的运行级别 1 的配置被损坏，你就不能使用单用户模式。

。

在使用 GRUB 引导装载程序的 x86 系统上，使用以下步骤来引导至单用户模式：

1. 引导时当出现 GRUB 闪屏的时候，按任意键来进入 GRUB 交互菜单。
2. Select Fedora with the version of the kernel that you wish to boot and type `a` to append the line.
3. 转到行尾，然后键入 `single`（按空格键，然后键入 `single`）。按 `Enter` 来退出编辑模式。

### 17.4. 引导紧急模式

在紧急模式中，你会被引导入尽可能少的系统环境中。根文件系统将会被挂载为只读模式，而且几乎什么都不会被设置。紧急模式优于单用户模式之处在于：在紧急模式中，`init` 文件没有被载入。如果 `init` 被损坏或停止运行，你仍可以挂载文件来恢复在重新安装中会丢失的数据。

要引导紧急模式，使用在 [17.3](#) “ ” 中描述的引导单用户的方法。其中有一个例外，你需要把关键字 `single` 替换成 `emergency`。



# 升级你当前的系统

This chapter explains the various methods available for upgrading your Fedora system.

## 18.1. 选择升级还是重新安装

While upgrading from Fedora 10 is supported, you are more likely to have a consistent experience by backing up your data and then installing this release of Fedora 11 over your previous Fedora installation.

To upgrade from Fedora 10 you should bring your system up to date before performing the upgrade.



### 重要

It is not possible to upgrade directly from Fedora 9 to Fedora 11. To upgrade Fedora 9 to Fedora 11, upgrade to Fedora 10 first.

If you currently use Fedora 10, you can perform a traditional, installation program-based upgrade.

但是，在升级系统前，你必须记住几个注意事项：

执行升级后，个体软件包配置文件可能会也可能不会有效。这是由于配置文件的格式和布局改变造成的。

If you have one of Red Hat's layered products (such as the Cluster Suite) installed, it may need to be manually upgraded after the upgrade has been completed.

升级后，第三方或 ISV 程序可能无法正确运行。

系统升级会安装系统里软件包的更新版本。

升级进程通常保留现存的配置文件，它给这些文件分别添加了 `.rpmsave` 扩展名（例如 `sendmail.cf.rpmsave`）。升级进程还在 `/root/upgrade.log` 日志中记录了它的行动。



### Warning

随着软件的发展，配置文件的格式也会改变，因此你应该在集成这些改变之前仔细地比较原始配置文件和新文件。



### Note

备份系统上的所有数据是明智之举。例如，如果你要升级或创建一个双引导系统，你应该备份这个硬盘驱动器上你想保存的数据。错误难免会发生，有些错误甚至会导致所有数据丢失。

某些升级的软件包可能需要安装其它软件包以便正常运行。如果你选择来定制要升级的软件包，你可能需要解决依赖关系的问题。否则，升级进程会自行解决依赖关系，但是，它可能会需要安装你的系统上没有的软件包。

依据你的系统分区情况而定，升级程序可能会提示你额外添加交换文件。如果升级程序没有检测到一个相当于你的内存两倍的交换文件，它会询问你是否要添加一个新的交换文件。如果你的系统没有足够的内存（小于 256 MB），推荐你添加这个交换文件。

## 18.2. 给你的系统升级

如果你指示安装程序执行升级，「升级检查」屏幕就会出现。



**Note**

If the contents of your `/etc/fedora-release` file have been changed from the default, your Fedora installation may not be found when attempting an upgrade to Fedora 11.

你可以使用下面的引导命令来在引导时放松对这个文件的检查：

```
linux upgradeany
```

Use the `linux upgradeany` command if your Fedora installation was not given as an option to upgrade.

要执行升级，选择「执行现有安装的升级」。当你做好升级准备后，点击「下一步」。

To re-install your system, select Perform a new Fedora installation and refer to [7 Installing on Intel and AMD Systems](#) for further instructions.

# Removing Fedora

We respect your freedom to choose an operating system for your computer. This section explains how to uninstall Fedora.



## These instructions may destroy data!

If you have data from Fedora that you want to keep, back it up before you proceed. Write your data to CD, DVD, external hard disk, or other storage device.

As a precaution, also back up data from any other operating systems that are installed on the same computer. Mistakes do happen and can result in the loss of all your data.

If you back up data from Fedora to be used later in another operating system, make sure that the storage medium or device is readable by that other operating system. For example, without extra third-party software, Microsoft Windows cannot read an external hard drive that you have formatted with Fedora to use the ext2, ext3, or ext4 file system.

To uninstall Fedora from your x86-based system, you must remove the Fedora boot loader information from your master boot record (MBR) and remove any partitions that contain the operating system. The method for removing Fedora from your computer varies, depending on whether Fedora is the only operating system installed on the computer, or whether the computer is configured to dual-boot Fedora and another operating system.

These instructions cannot cover every possible computer configuration. If your computer is configured to boot three or more operating systems, or has a highly-customized partition scheme, use the following sections as a general guide to partition removal with the various tools described. In these situations, you will also need to learn to configure your chosen bootloader. See [E, GRUB](#) for a general introduction to the subject, but detailed instructions are beyond the scope of this document.



## Legacy versions of Microsoft operating systems

Fdisk, the disk partitioning tool provided with MS-DOS and Microsoft Windows, is unable to remove the file systems used by Fedora. MS-DOS and versions of Windows prior to Windows XP (except for Windows 2000) have no other means of removing or modifying partitions. Refer to [19.3 “Replacing Fedora with MS-DOS or legacy versions of Microsoft Windows”](#) for alternative removal methods for use with MS-DOS and these versions of Windows.

## 19.1. Fedora is the only operating system on the computer

If Fedora is the only operating system on your computer, use the installation media for the replacement operating system to remove Fedora. Examples of installation media include the Windows XP installation CD, Windows Vista installation DVD, Mac OS X installation CDs or DVD, or the installation CD, CDs, or DVD of another Linux distribution.

Note that some manufacturers of factory-built computers pre-installed with Microsoft Windows do not supply the Windows installation CD or DVD with the computer. The manufacturer may instead have supplied their own "system restore disk", or have included software with the computer that allowed you to create your own "system restore disk" when you first started the computer. In some cases, the system restore software is stored on a separate partition on the system's hard drive. If you cannot identify the installation media for an operating system that was pre-installed on your computer, consult the documentation supplied with the machine, or contact the manufacturer.

When you have located the installation media for your chosen operating system:

1. Back up any data that you want to keep.
2. Shut down the computer.
3. Boot your computer with the installation disk for the replacement operating system.
4. Follow the prompts presented during the installation process. Windows, OS X, and most Linux installation disks allow you to manually partition your hard drive during the installation process, or will offer you the option to remove all partitions and start with a fresh partition scheme. At this point, remove any existing partitions that the installation software detects or allow the installer to remove the partitions automatically. "System restore" media for computers pre-installed with Microsoft Windows might create a default partition layout automatically without input from you.



#### 警告

If your computer has system restore software stored on a partition on a hard drive, take care when removing partitions while installing an operating system from other media. Under these circumstances, you could destroy the partition holding the system restore software.

## 19.2. Your computer dual-boots Fedora and another operating system

If your computer is configured to dual-boot Fedora and another operating system, removing Fedora without removing the partitions containing the other operating system and its data is more complicated. Specific instructions for a number of operating systems are set out below. To keep neither Fedora nor the other operating system, follow the steps described for a computer with only Fedora installed: [19.1 "Fedora is the only operating system on the computer"](#)

### 19.2.1. Your computer dual-boots Fedora and a Microsoft Windows operating system

#### 19.2.1.1. Windows 2000, Windows Server 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003



#### 警告

Once you commence this process, your computer may be left in an unbootable state until you complete the entire set of instructions. Carefully read the steps below before beginning the removal process. Consider opening these instructions on another computer or printing them so that you have access to them at all times during the process.

This procedure relies on the Windows Recovery Console that loads from the Windows installation disk, so you will not be able to complete the procedure without access to this disk. If you start this procedure and do not complete it, you could leave your computer in a condition where you cannot boot it. The "system restore disk" supplied with some factory-built computers that are sold with Windows pre-installed on them might not include the Windows Recovery Console.

During the process outlined in these instructions, the Windows Recovery Console will prompt you for the Administrator password for your Windows system. Do not follow these instructions unless you know the Administrator password for your system or are certain that an Administrator password has never been created, even by the computer manufacturer.


1. 删除Fedora分区

- a. 启动到Microsoft. Windows。
- b. Click Start>Run..., type diskmgmt.msc and press Enter. The Disk Management tool opens.

The tool displays a graphical representation of your disk, with bars representing each partition. The first partition is usually labeled NTFS and corresponds to your C: drive. At least two Fedora partitions will be visible. Windows will not display a file system type for these partitions, but may allocate drive letters to some of them.

- c. Right-click on one of the Fedora partitions, then click Delete Partition and click Yes to confirm the deletion. Repeat this process for the other Fedora partitions on your system. As you delete partitions, Windows labels the space on the hard drive previously occupied by those partitions as unallocated.


2. 让Windows使用Fedora腾出的硬盘空间(可选)



**注意**  
This step is not required to remove Fedora from your computer. However, if you skip this step, you will leave part of your hard drive's storage capacity unusable by Windows. Depending on your configuration, this might be a significant portion of the storage capacity of the drive.

Decide whether to extend an existing Windows partition to use the extra space, or create a new Windows partition in that space. If you create new a Windows partition, Windows will allocate a new drive letter to it and will interact with it as if it is a separate hard drive.

扩充已有Windows分区



**注意**  
The diskpart tool used in this step is installed as part of the Windows XP and Windows 2003 operating systems. If you are performing this step on a computer running Windows 2000 or Windows Server 2000, you can download a version of diskpart for your operating system from the Microsoft website.

- a. Click Start>Run..., type diskpart and press Enter. A command window appears.
- b. Type list volume and press Enter. Diskpart displays a list of the partitions on your system with a volume number, its drive letter, volume label, filesystem type, and size. Identify the Windows partition that you would like to use to occupy the space vacated on your hard drive by Fedora and take note of its volume number (for example, your Windows C: drive might be "Volume 0").

- c. Type select volume *N* (where *N* is the volume number for the Windows partition that you want to extend) and press Enter. Now type extend and press Enter. Diskpart now extends your chosen partition to fill the remaining space on your hard drive. It will notify you when the operation is complete.

#### 添加新Windows分区

- a. In the the Disk Management window, right-click on disk space that Windows labels as unallocated and select New Partition from the menu. The New Partition Wizard starts.
  - b. Follow the prompts presented by the New Partition Wizard. If you accept the default options, the tool will create a new partition that fills all available space on the hard drive, assigns it the next available drive letter, and formats it with the NTFS file system.
3. 恢复Windows引导程序
- a. 插入Windows安装盘重启电脑。电脑启动时屏幕 几秒钟内会出现以下信息：

按任意键从CD启动

在消息显示时按任意键，Windows安装软件将加载。

- b. 欢迎安装屏幕出现时，您可运行Windows Recovery Console。步骤依据不同版本的Windows会略有不同。
  - Windows 2000和 Windows Server 2000中，按R键，然后按C键。
  - 在Windows Xp和Windows Server 2003中，按R键。
- c. Windows Recovery Console在硬盘上扫描您的Windows系统，然后为每个系统分配一个号码。它会显示硬盘上已有的Windows列表并提示选择一个。选择您想恢复的Windows对应的号码。
- d. Windows Recovery Console提示您输入Windows的Administrator密码。输入Administrator密码然后按回车键。如果系统没有管理员密码，直接按回车键。
- e. 在提示符下，输入命令fixmbr然后按回车。fixmbr工具会为系统恢复MBR。
- f. 提示再次出现时，输入exit然后按回车键。
- g. 电脑会重启并进入Windows系统。

#### 19.2.1.2. Windows Vista和Windows Server 2008



##### 警告

Once you commence this process, your computer may be left in an unbootable state until you complete the entire set of instructions. Carefully read the steps below before beginning the removal process. Consider opening these instructions on another computer or printing them so that you have access to them at all times during the process.

This procedure relies on the Windows Recovery Environment that loads from the Windows installation disk and you will not be able to complete the procedure without access to this disk. If you start this procedure and do not complete it, you could leave your computer in a condition where you cannot boot it. The "system restore disk" supplied with some factory-built

computers that are sold with Windows pre-installed on them might not include the Windows Recovery Environment.

### 1. 删除Fedora分区

- a. 启动到Microsoft Windows。
- b. Click Start then type diskmgmt.msc into the Start Search box and press Enter. The Disk Management tool opens.

The tool displays a graphical representation of your disk, with bars representing each partition. The first partition is usually labeled NTFS and corresponds to your C: drive. At least two Fedora partitions will be visible. Windows will not display a file system type for these partitions, but may allocate drive letters to some of them.

- c. Right-click on one of the Fedora partitions, then click Delete Partition and click Yes to confirm the deletion. Repeat this process for the other Fedora partitions on your system. As you delete partitions, Windows labels the space on the hard drive previously occupied by those partitions as unallocated.

### 2. 让Windows使用Fedora腾出的硬盘空间(可选)



#### 注意

This step is not required to remove Fedora from your computer. However, if you skip this step, you will leave part of your hard drive's storage capacity unusable by Windows. Depending on your configuration, this might be a significant portion of the storage capacity of the drive.

Decide whether to extend an existing Windows partition to use the extra space, or create a new Windows partition in that space. If you create new a Windows partition, Windows will allocate a new drive letter to it and will interact with it as if it is a separate hard drive.

#### 扩充已有Windows分区

- a. In the Disk Management window, right-click on the Windows partition that you want to extend and select Extend Volume from the menu. The Extend Volume Wizard opens.
- b. Follow the prompts presented by the Extend Volume Wizard. If you accept the defaults that it offers you, the tool will extend the selected volume to fill all available space on the hard drive.

#### 添加新Windows分区

- a. In the Disk Management window, right-click on disk space that Windows labels as unallocated and select New Simple Volume from the menu. The New Simple Volume Wizard starts.
- b. Follow the prompts presented by the New Simple Volume Wizard. If you accept the default options, the tool will create a new partition that fills all available space on the hard drive, assigns it the next available drive letter, and formats it with the NTFS file system.

### 3. 恢复Windows引导程序

- a. 插入Windows安装盘重启电脑。电脑启动时屏幕 几秒钟内会出现以下信息:

按任意键从CD或DVD启动

在消息显示时按任意键，Windows安装软件将加载。

- b. 在Install • Windows对话框，• 选择好您的语言、时区、货币单位和键盘类型，单击下一步
- c. 点修复您的电脑。
- d. The Windows Recovery Environment (WRE) shows you the Windows installations that it can detect on your system. Select the installation that you want to restore, then click Next.
- e. 点命令提示窗口。将打开命令行窗口。
- f. 输入bootrec /fixmbr然后按回车。
- g. 提示符再次出现时，关闭命令窗口，然后点重启。
- h. 电脑会重启并进入Windows系统。

### 19.2.2. Your computer dual-boots Fedora and Mac OS X

The procedure to remove Fedora from a system that dual-boots Fedora and Mac OS X varies depending on whether you have installed Boot Camp on your computer:

[You are not using Boot Camp on your computer](#)

1. Open the Disk Utility in /Applications/Utilities.
2. Select the entry on the left for the disk volume containing Fedora.
3. Click the Partition tab on the right side of the dialog.
4. Select the Fedora partitions and click the minus button below the partition layout diagram.
5. Resize your OS X partition to include the newly freed space.

[You are using Boot Camp on your computer](#)

1. Open the Boot Camp Assistant in /Applications/Utilities.
2. Select Create or remove a Windows partition and click Next.
3. If your computer has a single internal disk, click Restore.
4. If your computer has multiple internal disks, select the Linux disk, and then select Restore to a single Mac OS partition. Click Continue.

### 19.2.3. Your computer dual-boots Fedora and a different Linux distribution



#### 注意

Because of the differences between the many different Linux distributions, these instructions are a general guide only. Specific details will vary according to your chosen distribution and the



configuration of your particular computer. This example uses GParted as a partition editor and gedit as a text editor, but many other tools are available to perform these tasks. To follow these instructions exactly as written, install GParted and gedit.

### 1. Remove Fedora partitions

- a. Boot the Linux version that you want to keep on your computer.
- b. Open GParted, either from a desktop menu or by typing `gparted` at the command line and pressing Enter.
- c. GParted displays the partitions that it detects on your computer, both as a graph and as a table.

Right-click the Fedora partitions, then select Delete.

### 2. Remove Fedora entries from your bootloader



#### Example only

These instructions assume that your system uses the GRUB bootloader. If you use a different bootloader (such as LILO) consult the documentation for that software to identify and remove Fedora entries from its list of boot targets and to ensure that your default operating system is correctly specified.

- a. At the command line, type `su -` and press Enter. When the system prompts you for the root password, type the password and press Enter.
- b. Type `gedit /boot/grub/grub.conf` and press Enter. This opens the `grub.conf` file in the gedit text editor.
- c. A typical Fedora entry in the `grub.conf` file consists of four lines:

```
title Fedora (2.6.27.19-170.2.35.fc10.i686)

root (hd0,1)

kernel      /vmlinuz-2.6.27.19-170.2.35.fc10.i686      ro      root=UUID=04a07c13-e6bf-6d5a-
b207-002689545705 rhgb quiet

initrd /initrd-2.6.27.19-170.2.35.fc10.i686.img
```

#### 例 19.1. Example Fedora entry in `grub.conf`

Depending on the configuration of your system, there may be multiple Fedora entries in `grub.conf`, each corresponding to a different version of the Linux kernel. Delete each of the Fedora entries from the file.

- d. `Grub.conf` contains a line that specifies the default operating system to boot, in the format `default=N` where  $N$  is a number equal to or greater than 0. If  $N$  is set to 0, GRUB will boot the first operating system in the list. If  $N$  is set to 1, it will boot the second operating system, and so forth.

Identify the entry for the operating system that you want GRUB to boot by default and note its place in the order within the list.

Make sure that the `default=` line contains the number *one below* the number of your chosen default operating system in the list.

Save the updated `grub.conf` file and close `gedit`

### 3. Make space available to your operating system



#### 注意

This step is not required to remove Fedora from your computer. However, if you skip this step, you will leave part of your hard drive's storage capacity unusable by your other Linux operating system. Depending on your configuration, this might be a significant portion of the storage capacity of the drive.



#### 注意

To carry out this step, you require live media for a Linux distribution, for example, the Fedora Live CD or the Knoppix DVD.

The method to make the space freed by removing the Fedora partitions available to your other Linux operating system differs, depending on whether your chosen operating system is installed on disk partitions configured to use Logical Volume Management (LVM) or not.

#### If you do not use LVM

- a. Boot your computer from Linux live media, and install `gparted` if it is not already present.
- b. Open `GParted`, either from a desktop menu or by typing `gparted` at the command line and pressing `Enter`.
- c. `GParted` displays the partitions on your system both as a graph and as a table. Click on the partition that you want to extend to use the space freed by removing Fedora, and click the `Resize/Move` button.
- d. A new dialog opens, allowing you to specify a new size for the partition by entering it as numbers, or by dragging the sides of the graphical representation of the partition so that it fills the available space. Click the `Resize/Move` button in this dialog to confirm your choice.
- e. Back in the main `GParted` window, click `Apply`. Take note of the name of the partition that you just resized, for example, `/dev/sda3`.
- f. When `GParted` finishes resizing the partition, type `e2fsck partition` at a command line and press `Enter`, where *partition* is the partition that you just resized. For example, if you just resized `/dev/sda3`, you would type `e2fsck /dev/sda3`

Linux now checks the file system of the newly-resized partition.

- g. When the file system check finishes, type `resize2fs partition` at a command line and press `Enter`, where *partition* is the partition that you just resized. For example, if you just resized `/dev/sda3`, you would type `resize2fs /dev/sda3`

Linux now resizes your file system to fill the newly-resized partition.

- h. Restart your computer. The extra space is now available to your Linux installation.

#### If you use LVM

- a. Boot your computer from Linux live media and install `gparted` and `lvm2` if they are not already present.
- b. [Create a new partition in the free space on the disk](#)
  - i. Open GParted, either from a desktop menu or by typing `gparted` at the command line and pressing Enter.
  - ii. GParted displays the partitions on your system both as a graph and as a table. The space freed by removing Fedora is labeled unallocated. Right-click on the unallocated space and select New. Accept the defaults and GParted will create a new partition that fills the space available on the drive.
  - iii. Click Apply. GParted writes the changes to your hard drive. Take note of the name of the partition that you just created, and the name of the device that holds the partition. For example, you may have created `/dev/sda3` on device `/dev/sda`.
- c. [Change the partition type identifier](#)
  - i. `Fdisk` is a partitioning tool capable of preparing partitions for LVM. At a command line, type `fdisk device` and press Enter, where *device* is the name of the device on which you just created a partition. For example, `fdisk /dev/sda`.
  - ii. At the prompt `Command (m for help):`, press `T` and Enter to use `fdisk` to change a partition type.
  - iii. At the prompt `Partition number (1-4):`, type the number of the partition that you just created. For example, if you just created partition `/dev/sda3`, type the number 3 and press Enter. This identifies the partition whose type `fdisk` will change.
  - iv. At the prompt `Hex code (type L to list codes):`, type the code `8e` and press Enter. This is the code for a Linux LVM partition.
  - v. At the prompt `Command (m for help):`, press `W` and Enter. `Fdisk` writes the new type code to the partition and exits.
- d. [Expand the volume group](#)
  - i. At the command prompt, type `lvm` and press Enter to start the `lvm2` tool.
  - ii. At the `lvm>` prompt, type `pvcreate partition` and press Enter, where *partition* is the partition that you recently created. For example, `pvcreate /dev/sda3`. This creates `/dev/sda3` as a physical volume in LVM.
  - iii. At the `lvm>` prompt, type `vgextend VolumeGroup partition` and press Enter, where *VolumeGroup* is the LVM volume group on which Linux is installed and *partition* is the partition that you recently created. For example, if Linux is installed on `/dev/VolumeGroup00`, you would type `vgextend /dev/VolumeGroup00 /dev/sda3` to extend that volume group to include the physical volume at `/dev/sda3`.
  - iv. At the `lvm>` prompt, type `lvextend -l +100%FREE LogVol` and press Enter, where *LogVol* is the logical volume that contains your Linux filesystem. For example, to extend `LogVol00` to fill the newly-available space in its volume group, `VolGroup00`, type `lvextend -l +100%FREE /dev/VolGroup00/LogVol00`.

- v. At the `lvm>` prompt, type `exit` and press `Enter` to exit `lvm2`
- e. Type `e2fsck LogVol1` at the command line and press `Enter`, where `LogVol1` is the logical volume that you just resized. For example, if you just resized `/dev/VolumeGroup00/LogVol00`, you would type `e2fsck /dev/VolumeGroup00/LogVol00`

Linux now checks the file system of the newly-resized logical volume.

- f. When the file system check finishes, type `resize2fs LogVol1` at a command line and press `Enter`, where `LogVol1` is the partition that you just resized. For example, if you just resized `/dev/VolumeGroup00/LogVol00`, you would type `resize2fs /dev/VolumeGroup00/LogVol00`

Linux now resizes your file system to fill the newly-resized logical volume.

- g. Restart your computer. The extra space is now available to your Linux installation.

### 19.3. Replacing Fedora with MS-DOS or legacy versions of Microsoft Windows

在 DOS 和 Windows 系统中，你可以使用 Windows `fdisk` 工具来创建一个新的带有 *undocumented* 标志的 MBR: `/mbr`。这 重写 MBR 来引导主 DOS 分区。该命令类似：

```
fdisk /mbr
```

如果你需要从硬盘驱动器中删除 Linux，并且已经试图用默认的 DOS（Windows）`fdisk` 来这么做，你将会遇到“ ”的问题。要删除非 DOS 分区的最好办法是使用一个可以识别 DOS 以外的分区的工具。

To begin, insert the Fedora CD #1 and boot your system. Once you have booted off the CD, a boot prompt appears. At the boot prompt, type: `linux rescue`. This starts the rescue mode program.

You are prompted for your keyboard and language requirements. Enter these values as you would during the installation of Fedora.

Next, a screen appears telling you that the program attempts to find a Fedora install to rescue. Select `Skip` on this screen.

选择了「跳过」之后，将出现一个命令提示，在这里你可以访问要删除的分区。

首先，键入命令 `list-harddrives`。这条命令会列出你的系统上所有被安装程序识别的硬盘驱动器，以及它们的大小（以 MB 为单位）。



#### Warning

请注意，只删除必要的 分区。删除其它分区可能会导致数据丢失或导致系统环境受损。

要删除分区，使用分区工具 `parted`。启动 `parted`，此处的 `/dev/hda` 是要删除的分区所在的设备：

```
parted /dev/hda
```

使用 `print` 命令来查看当前的分区表，从而判定要删除的分区号码：

```
print
```

`print` 命令还可以显示分区的类型（如：`linux-swap`、`ext2`、`ext3` 等等）。了解分区类型有助于你判定是否应该删除该分区。

使用 `rm` 命令来删除分区。例如，要删除次要号码（minor number）为 3 的分区：

```
rm 3
```



### Important

只要你按下 [Enter] 键，这些改变就会生效，因此在确定前请反复检查命令。

删除分区后，使用 `print` 命令来确认它已从分区表中被删除了。

一旦你已经删除了 Linux 分区，并且做完了所有必要的改变，键入 `quit` 来退出 `parted`。

退出 `parted` 后，在引导提示后键入 `exit` 来退出救援模式并重新启动系统，而不是继续安装。系统应该自动重启。如果没有重启，你可以用 `Control+Alt+Delete` 来重启系统。



---

## 部分 V. Technical appendixes

The appendixes in this section do not contain instructions that tell you how to install Fedora. Instead, they provide technical background that you might find helpful to understand the options that Fedora offers you at various points in the installation process.

---

---

---



---

## 附录 A. 磁盘分区简介



### Note

This appendix is not necessarily applicable to non-x86-based architectures. However, the general concepts mentioned here may apply.

This appendix is not necessarily applicable to non-x86-based architectures. However, the general concepts mentioned here may apply.

If you are reasonably comfortable with disk partitions, you could skip ahead to [A.1.4 “Making Room For Fedora”](#), for more information on the process of freeing up disk space to prepare for a Fedora installation. This section also discusses the partition naming scheme used by Linux systems, sharing disk space with other operating systems, and related topics.

### A.1. 硬盘基本概念

硬盘功能极为简单 — 它们被用来可靠地储存及检索数据。

当讨论到诸如磁盘分区的问题时，了解一点底层的硬件是很重要的。不幸的是，我们往往容易拘泥于细节。因此，这个附录使用了磁盘的简化框图来帮助说明当磁盘被分区时真正发生的事情。[A.1 “](#)  
”展示了崭新的，未被使用的磁盘情况。

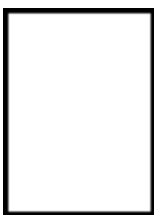


图 A.1. 未使用过的磁盘驱动器

没什么可看的，是不是？不过，若我们仅在一个最基本的层次上讨论磁盘驱动器，此图表已足够。假设我们要在这个磁盘驱动器上面储存一些数据，就目前而言，这还不行。我们首先要做一些准备工作。

#### A.1.1. 不是你写入什么，而是你怎么写入

有经验的计算机用户可能对此心中有数。我们需要 *format* 这个驱动器。格式化又称“制作 *file system*”，它是一个将信息写入驱动器，在未经格式化的驱动器内的空白空间中建立秩序的过程。

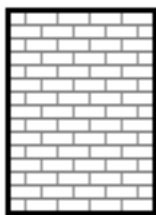


图 A.2. 有文件系统的磁盘驱动器

如 [A.2 “](#)  
”所暗示的，文件系统所强加的顺序涉及了一些折衷方案：

驱动器上极小的一部分可用空间被用来储存与文件系统有关的数据，这可以被视作管理开销。

文件系统把剩余的空间划分为小的、大小一致的段。在 Linux 中，这些段被称为 *block*。<sup>1</sup>

由于文件系统带来创建目录和文件的可能性，以上牺牲可以被看作所需付出的一个很小的代价。

It is also worth noting that there is no single, universal file system. As [A.3](#) “”, shows, a disk drive may have one of many different file systems written on it. As you might guess, different file systems tend to be incompatible; that is, an operating system that supports one file system (or a handful of related file system types) may not support another. This last statement is not a hard-and-fast rule, however. For example, Fedora supports a wide variety of file systems (including many commonly used by other operating systems), making data interchange between different file systems easy.

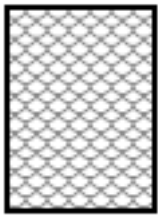


图 A.3. 含有不同文件系统的磁盘驱动器

当然，将文件系统写入磁盘仅仅是一个开端。这个过程的目标实际上是 并且 数据。写入一些文件后，让我们再来看一看磁盘。

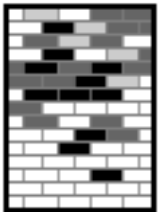


图 A.4. 已写入数据的磁盘驱动器

如 [A.4](#) “” 所示，某些之前的空数据块现在也存放着数据。然而，光看这个框图，我们不能确认有多少个文件系统在这个磁盘上。这有可能是一个，也有可能是多个，因为所有的文件都使用至少一个数据块而有些文件则使用多块。另外一个值得注意的地方是，已经被使用的块不需要组成连续的空间；未使用的和已使用的块可以散布着排列。这被称作 *fragmentation*。当试图调整现存分区的大小时，Fragmentation 会起到它的作用。

如同许多与计算机相关的科技，磁盘驱动器自问世后一直在不断地变化。特别是，它们越来越大。不是实际尺寸越来越大，而是它们储存信息的能力越来越大。这种新增的容量导致了磁盘驱动器使用方法的根本改变。

### A.1.2. 分区：将一个驱动器变成多个驱动器

由于磁盘驱动器容量的不断增大，一些人开始质问将所有格式化的空间并为一大块是否明智。这一类想法的动机有哲学上的，也有技术上的。从哲学角度上讲，一个较大的磁盘驱动器所提供的额外空间若超过了一定的大小似乎只会造成更多的杂乱无章。从技术角度上讲，某些文件系统不是为支持大于一定容量的磁盘驱动器而设计的。或者，某些文件系统 支持拥有巨大容量的较大的驱动器，但是由文件系统跟踪文件所强加于上的管理费用也随之变得过高过大。

解决这个问题的办法是将磁盘划分为 *partition*。每一分区都可以像一个独立的磁盘一样被访问。这是通过添加 *partition table* 来做到的。



### Note

虽然本章图表中所显示的分区表和实际磁盘驱动器是分开的，这并不完全正确。事实上，分区表被保存在磁盘的最起首，在任何文件系统或用户数据之前。但是为了清楚起见，我们在图表中将之分开。

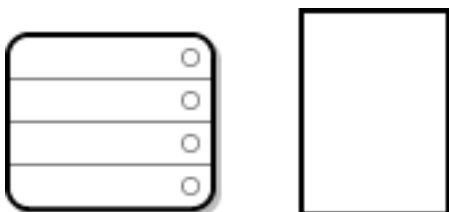


图 A.5. 带有分区表的磁盘驱动器

如 [A.5 “ ”](#) 所示，分区表被分成 4 个部分或者说是 4 个 *primary* 分区。主分区是硬盘上的可以只包含一个逻辑分区（或部分）的分区。每个分区都存放着定义单一分区的必要的信息，这意味着分区表最多可以定义 4 个分区。

每个分区表项目都包含着该分区的几项重要的特征：

在磁盘上分区开始和结束的地点（起止点）

分区是否“活跃”

分区的类型

让我们来仔细查看一下每一个特征。起止点实际上定义了分区的大小及在磁盘上的位置。“活跃”标志是被某些操作系统的引导装载程序所用。换一句话说，标为“活跃”的分区上的操作系统将会被引导。

分区类型可能有些不易分辨。类型是标识分区将会被如何使用的数字。如果这句话听起来有些笼统，那是因为分区类型术语本身也有些笼统。某些操作系统用分区类型来代表一种指定的系统类型，或将分区标为与某个操作系统相关联的分区，或用来指明该分区包含着可引导的操作系统，或是以上三者的结合。

现在，你可能想知道怎么处理其他复杂的情况。你可以参阅 [A.6 “ ”](#) 里的例子。

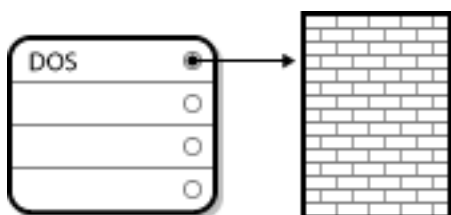


图 A.6. 只有一个分区的磁盘驱动器

在许多情况下，整个磁盘上只有一个分区，基本上是重复分区以前所使用的方法。分区表内只有一个项目，它指向分区的起点。

我们已经把这个分区标记为“DOS”类型。虽然这只是 [A.1 “Partition Types”](#) 里列出的可能类型里的其中一种，但对于这里的讨论来说，这已经足够了。

[A.1 “Partition Types”](#) 中包括了一些常用的（和罕见的）分区类型，以及它们的十六进制数值。

Partition Type	Value	Partition Type	Value
Empty	00	Novell Netware 386	65
DOS 12-bit FAT	01	PIC/IX	75
XENIX root	02	Old MINIX	80
XENIX usr	03	Linux/MINUX	81
DOS 16-bit <=32M	04	Linux swap	82
Extended	05	Linux native	83
DOS 16-bit >=32	06	Linux extended	85
OS/2 HPFS	07	Amoeba	93
AIX	08	Amoeba BBT	94
AIX bootable	09	BSD/386	a5
OS/2 Boot Manager	0a	OpenBSD	a6
Win95 FAT32	0b	NEXTSTEP	a7
Win95 FAT32 (LBA)	0c	BSDI fs	b7
Win95 FAT16 (LBA)	0e	BSDI swap	b8
Win95 Extended (LBA)	0f	Syrinx	c7
Venix 80286	40	CP/M	db
Novell	51	DOS access	e1
PPC PReP Boot	41	DOS R/O	e3
GNU HURD	63	DOS secondary	f2
Novell Netware 286	64	BBT	ff

表 A.1. Partition Types

### A.1.3. 分区内的分区 — 扩展分区概述

经过一段时间后，四个分区很明显将不够用。随着磁盘驱动器的不断增大，配置了四个相当大的分区后仍有剩余空间的可能性会越来越大。我们需要有一些创建更多分区的方法。

输入扩展分区。你可能已经注意到了， [A.1 “Partition Types”](#) 里有一个 “Extended” 分区类型。扩展分区里处于核心地位的就是这个类型。

当分区被创建且类型被设置为 “Extended,” 时，扩展分区表就会被建立。实质上，扩展分区就象是它右边的一个磁盘 — 它有指向完全包含在扩展分区里的一个或多个分区（和 4 个 *primary partitions* 相反，这被称作 *logical partitions*）的分区表。 [A.7 “](#)展示了有一个主分区和一个包含两个逻辑分区的扩展分区的磁盘（还有一些未被分区的空闲空间）。

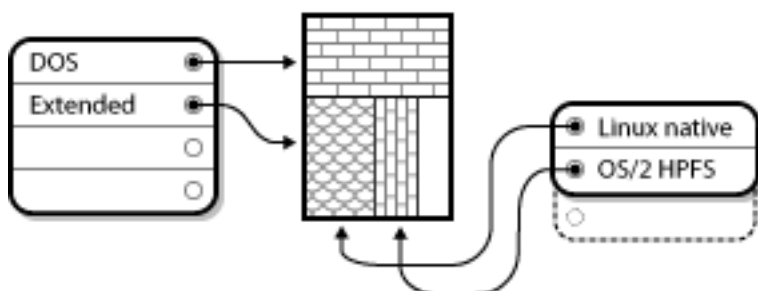


图 A.7. 带有扩展分区的磁盘驱动器

如图表中所暗示，主分区与逻辑分区之间有一个区别 — 主分区只能有四个，但是可以存在的逻辑分区数量却无固定限制。不过，鉴于 Linux 进入分区的方式，你应该避免在一个磁盘驱动器上定义 12 个以上逻辑分区。

Now that we have discussed partitions in general, let us review how to use this knowledge to install Fedora.

#### A.1.4. Making Room For Fedora

当你试图为你的硬盘重新分区时，有三种可能的情况：

有可用的未分区的空闲空间

有可用的未使用过的分区

被活跃使用的分区内有可用的空闲空间

让我们依次来看一看每一种情况。

**Note**

Keep in mind that the following illustrations are simplified in the interest of clarity and do not reflect the exact partition layout that you encounter when actually installing Fedora.

##### A.1.4.1. 使用未经分区的空闲空间

在这种情形下，已经定义的分区并没有占满整个磁盘，它留出了不属于任何分区的未分配的空间。

A.8 “ ” 展示了这种情况。

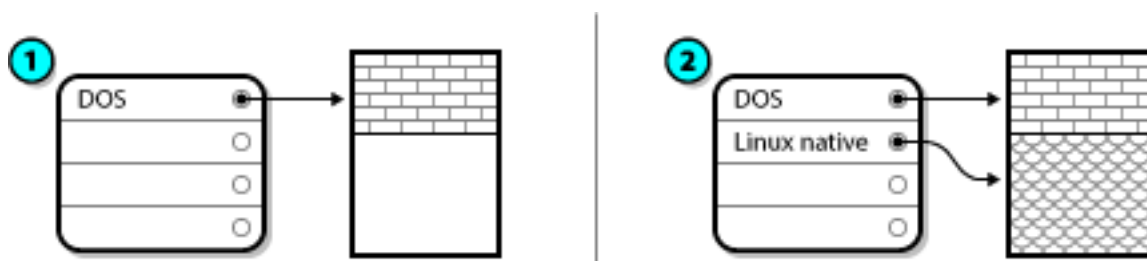


图 A.8. 带有未分区的空闲空间的磁盘驱动器

在 A.8 “ ” 里，1 代表带有未被分配的空间的未定义分区，2 代表带有已被分配的空间的已定义分区。

如果细想一下，你就会认识到一个未经使用的硬盘也属这种类型。唯一的区别是后者的 空间都不属于任何定义的分区的。

In any case, you can create the necessary partitions from the unused space. Unfortunately, this scenario, although very simple, is not very likely (unless you have just purchased a new disk just for Fedora). Most pre-installed operating systems are configured to take up all available space on a disk drive (refer to [A.1.4.3](#) “[Using free space in active partitions](#)”).

接下来，我们将讨论一种更普遍的情况。

#### A.1.4.2. 使用一个未使用过的分区中的空间

既然这样，你可能会拥有一个或多个不再使用的分区。可能你在过去安装过其他操作系统，它占用的分区也好像从来没再使用过。[A.9](#) “[Using free space in unpartitioned disk](#)” 演示了这样的例子。

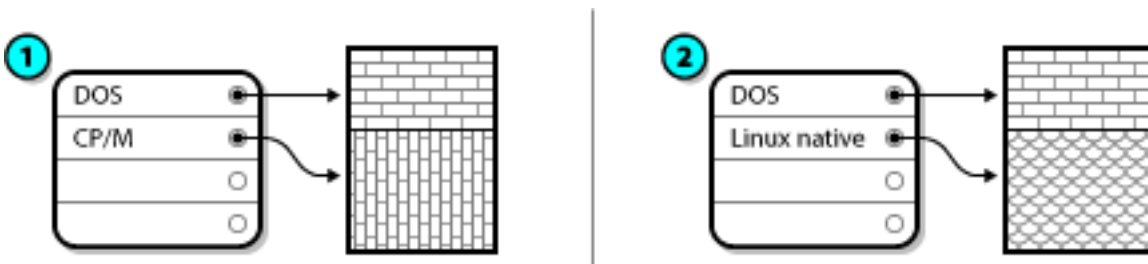


图 A.9. 带有未使用分区的磁盘驱动器

在 [A.9](#) “[Using free space in unpartitioned disk](#)” 里，1 代表未使用的分区，2 代表为 Linux 重新分配的未使用过的分区。

如果你发现自己处于这种情况，你可以使用那些拨给未使用分区的空间。首先，你应该删除该分区，然后在其上创建相应的 Linux 分区。你可以在安装过程中删除未用分区，然后再手工创建新分区。

#### A.1.4.3. 使用活跃分区中的空闲空间

这是最常见的情况。不幸的是，这也是最难处理的情况。主要问题是，即便你有足够的空闲空间，它们目前已被分配给一个正在使用中的分区。如果你购买了一个带有预装软件的计算机，很可能整个硬盘是一个单个的带有操作系统和数据的大分区。

除了给你的系统添加一个新硬盘驱动器外，你还有以下两种选择：

简而言之，这种方法让你删除一个大分区而创建几个小一些的分​​区。你可能想象得到，贮存在原来分区上的所有数据将会被破坏。这意味着你有做完全备份的必要。为你自己的利益着想，请做两个备份，并校验（如果你的备份软件提供了的话）这些备份，在你删除分区 试着从你的备份中读取数据。



#### Warning

如果该分区上装有某类操作系统，该操作系统也需要被重新安装。需要注意的是，那些带有预装操作系统售出的计算机可能没有包括重装该系统所需的光盘介质。请在破坏你的原有分区及原有操作系统 觉查到这一点。

After creating a smaller partition for your existing operating system, you can reinstall any software, restore your data, and start your Fedora installation. [A.10](#) “[Using free space in active partitions](#)” shows this being done.

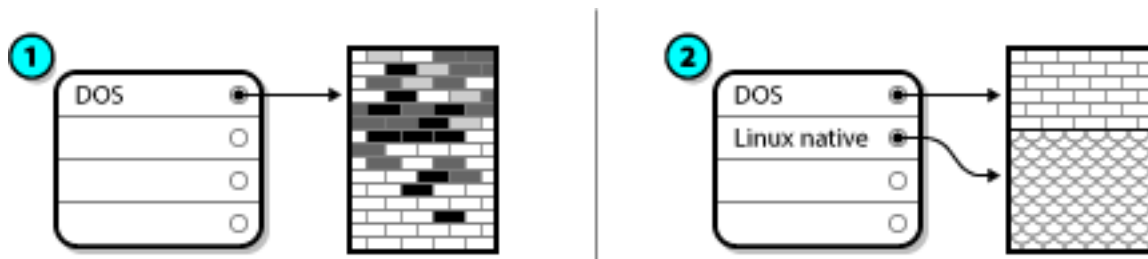


图 A.10. 被破坏性重新分区的磁盘驱动器

在 A.10 “ ” 里，1 代表之前的情景，2 代表之后的情景。

!

**Warning**

如 A.10 “ ” 所示，在最初的分区的里数据都因没有正确部分而丢失。

这要求你运行一个似乎可以“为所不可为”的程序：它会把大分区变小，却不会丢失该分区上的原有文件。许多人都发现这个办法既可靠又简单可行。但是哪一个软件可以帮助你达到这一目的呢？在软件市场上有好几种磁盘管理软件。你应该做一番调查来找到最适合你的情况的一种。

非破坏性分区过程是非常直捷了当的，它包括以下几个步骤：

压缩和备份现存数据

重新划分现存分区的大小

创建新分区

接下来，我们将详细说明每一步骤。

#### A.1.4.3.1. 压缩现存数据

如 A.11 “ ” 所示，第一步是压缩现有分区里的数据。这样做的原因是可以重新安排数据，以便分区末端的可用空间最大化。

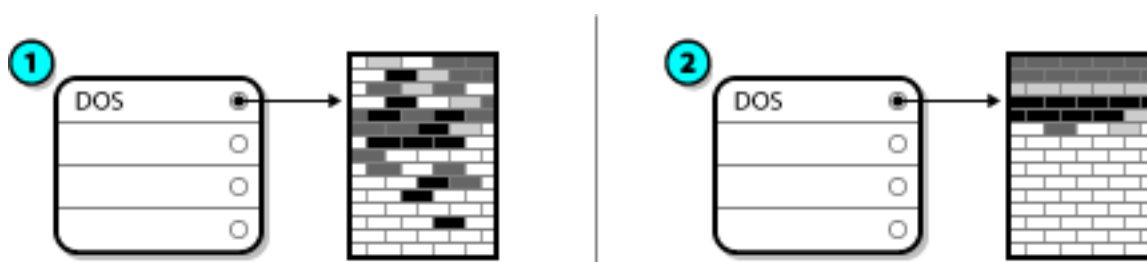


图 A.11. 磁盘驱动器被压缩

在 A.11 “ ” ，1 代表之前的情景，2 代表之后的情景。

这一步骤至关重要。不执行这一步骤，你的数据所在位置可能会阻止分区被重新划分为想要的大小。还请注意，由于某种原因，某些数据不能被移动。如果情况如此（这会严重地限制你的新分区的大小），你可能会被迫在你的磁盘上进行破坏性重新分区。



### A.1.4.3.2. 重新划分现存分区的大小

A.12 “ ”显示了重新划分分区大小的实际过程。这一过程的结果要依你所使用的软件而定。多数情况下，新空出的空闲空间被用来创建一个与原有分区同类的未格式化的分区。

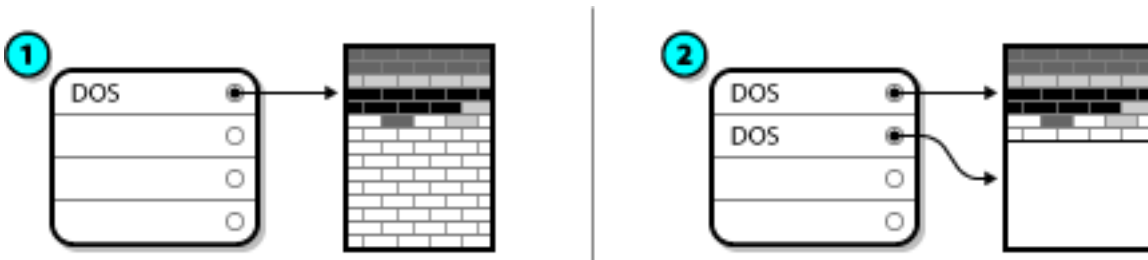


图 A.12. 分区大小被重新划分的磁盘驱动器

在 A.12 “ ”，1 代表之前的情景，2 代表之后的情景。

理解你所使用的重新分区软件对新空出的空间的操作是很重要的，只有这样，你才能正确地采取相应措施。在我们示范的情况下，最佳措施是删除新建的 DOS 分区，然后创建恰当的 Linux 分区。

### A.1.4.3.3. 创建新分区

如前面的步骤所暗示的，创建新的分区有可能是也可能不是必需的。然而，除非用来调整大小的软件是 Linux 软件，否则你很可能必须删除在调整大小过程中创建的分区。A.13 “ ”里展示了这种情况。

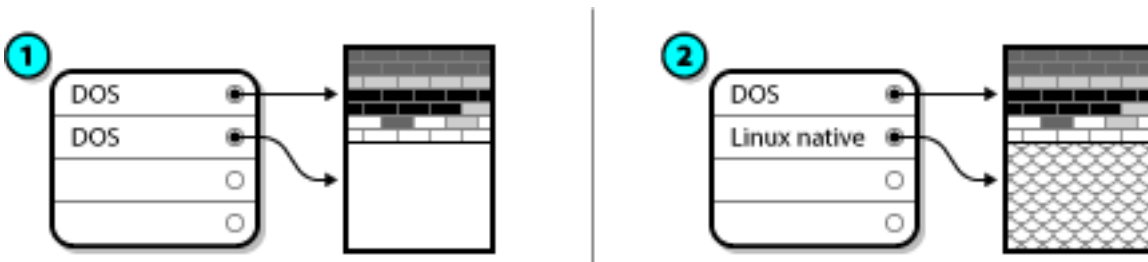


图 A.13. 带有最终分区配置的磁盘驱动器

在 A.13 “ ”，1 代表之前的情景，2代表之后的情景。

**Note**  
下列信息是基于 intel 的计算机所特有的。

为了方便用户，我们提供了 parted 工具。它是一个可免费获得的重新划分分区大小的程序。

如果你决定使用 parted 来重新给你的硬盘驱动器分区，你必须熟悉磁盘贮存区，并备份了你的计算机上的数据。这一点至关重要。你应该给你的计算机上重要的数据做两个备份。这些备份应该保存在可移介质上（如磁盘、光盘或磁带），而且你应该在继续前确定它们可以被读取。

Should you decide to use parted, be aware that after parted runs you are left with *two* partitions: the one you resized, and the one parted created out of the newly freed space. If your goal is to use that space to install Fedora, you should delete the newly created partition, either by using the partitioning utility under your current operating system or while setting up partitions during installation.



### A.1.5. 分区命名方案

Linux 使用字母和数字的组合来指代磁盘分区。这可能有些使人迷惑不解，特别是如果你以前使用“C 驱动器”这种方法来指代硬盘及它们的分区。在 DOS/Windows 的世界里，分区是用下列方法命名的：

每个分区都被检查过以便判定它是否可被 DOS/Windows 读取。

如果分区类型是兼容的，它会被指派给一个“驱动器字母”。驱动器字母从“C”开始，然后依据要标签的分区数量而按字母顺序推移。

驱动器字母可以用来指代那个分区，也可以用来指带分区所含的文件系统。

Fedora uses a naming scheme that is more flexible and conveys more information than the approach used by other operating systems. The naming scheme is file-based, with file names in the form of `/dev/xxyn`.

下面说明了解析分区命名方案的方法：

**/dev/**

这个字串是所有设备文件所在的目录名。因为分区位于硬盘上，而硬盘是设备，所以这些文件代表了在 `/dev/` 上所有可能的分区。

**xx**

分区名的前两个字母标明分区所在设备的类型。通常是 `hd`（IDE 磁盘）或 `sd`（SCSI 磁盘）。

**y**

这个字母标明分区所在的设备。例如，`/dev/hda`（第一个 IDE 磁盘）或 `/dev/sdb`（第二个 SCSI 磁盘）

**n**

最后的数字代表分区。前四个分区（主分区或扩展分区）是用数字从 1 排列到 4。逻辑分区从 5 开始。例如，`/dev/hda3` 是在第一个 IDE 硬盘上的第三个主分区或扩展分区；`/dev/sdb6` 是在第二个 SCSI 硬盘上的第二个逻辑分区。



#### Note

There is no part of this naming convention that is based on partition type; unlike DOS/Windows, *all* partitions can be identified under Fedora. Of course, this does not mean that Fedora can access data on every type of partition, but in many cases it is possible to access data on a partition dedicated to another operating system.

Keep this information in mind; it makes things easier to understand when you are setting up the partitions Fedora requires.

### A.1.6. 磁盘分区以及其它操作系统

If your Fedora partitions are sharing a hard disk with partitions used by other operating systems, most of the time you will have no problems. However, there are certain combinations of Linux and other operating systems that require extra care.

### A.1.7. 磁盘分区和挂载点

令许多 Linux 的新用户感到困惑的一个地方是各分区是如何被 Linux 操作系统使用及访问的。它在 DOS/Windows 中相对来说较为简单。每一分区有一个“驱动器字母”，你用恰当的驱动器字母来指代相应分区上的文件和目录。

这与 Linux 处理分区及磁盘贮存问题的方法截然不同。其主要的区别在于，Linux 中的每一个分区都是构成支持一组文件和目录所必需的贮存区的一部分。它是通过 *mounting* 来实现的，挂载是将分区关联到某一目录的过程。挂载分区使起始于这个指定目录（通称为 *mount point*）的贮存区能够被使用。

For example, if partition `/dev/hda5` is mounted on `/usr/`, that would mean that all files and directories under `/usr/` physically reside on `/dev/hda5`. So the file `/usr/share/doc/FAQ/txt/Linux-FAQ` would be stored on `/dev/hda5`, while the file `/etc/gdm/custom.conf` would not.

继续以上的例子，`/usr/` 之下的一个或多个目录还有可能是其它分区的挂载点。例如，某个分区（假设为 `/dev/hda7`）可以被挂载到 `/usr/local/` 下，这意味着 `/usr/local/man/whatis` 将位于 `/dev/hda7` 上而不是 `/dev/hda5` 上。

### A.1.8. 多少个分区？

At this point in the process of preparing to install Fedora, you must give some consideration to the number and size of the partitions to be used by your new operating system. The question of "how many partitions" continues to spark debate within the Linux community and, without any end to the debate in sight, it is safe to say that there are probably as many partition layouts as there are people debating the issue.

记住，我们推荐，除非你有特殊的原因，你应该至少创建下面的分区：`swap`、`/boot/`（或者是用于 Itanium 系统的 `/boot/efi/` 分区）、用于 Itanium 系统的 `/var/` 分区以及 `/`（根分区）。

要获得更多信息，请参阅 [7.21.4](#) “”。

---

## 附录 B. iSCSI disks

*Internet Small Computer System Interface* (iSCSI) is a protocol that allows computers to communicate with storage devices by SCSI requests and responses carried over TCP/IP. Because iSCSI is based on the standard SCSI protocols, it uses some terminology from SCSI. The device on the SCSI bus to which requests get sent (and which answers these requests) is known as the *target* and the device issuing requests is known as the *initiator*. In other words, an iSCSI disk is a target and the iSCSI software equivalent of a SCSI controller or SCSI Host Bus Adapter (HBA) is called an initiator. This appendix only covers Linux as an iSCSI initiator: how Linux uses iSCSI disks, but not how Linux hosts iSCSI disks.

Linux has a software iSCSI initiator in the kernel that takes the place and form of a SCSI HBA driver and therefore allows Linux to use iSCSI disks. However, as iSCSI is a fully network-based protocol, iSCSI initiator support needs more than just the ability to send SCSI packets over the network. Before Linux can use an iSCSI target, Linux must find the target on the network and make a connection to it. In some cases, Linux must send authentication information to gain access to the target. Linux must also detect any failure of the network connection and must establish a new connection, including logging in again if necessary.

The discovery, connection, and logging in is handled in userspace by the `iscsiadm` utility, and the error handling is also handled in userspace by `iscsid`.

Both `iscsiadm` and `iscsid` are part of the `iscsi-initiator-utils` package under Fedora.

### B.1. iSCSI disks inanaconda

Anaconda can discover (and then log in to) iSCSI disks in two ways:

1. When anaconda starts, it checks if the BIOS or add-on boot ROMs of the system support *iSCSI Boot Firmware Table* (iBFT), a BIOS extension for systems which can boot from iSCSI. If the BIOS supports iBFT, anaconda will read the iSCSI target information for the configured boot disk from the BIOS and log in to this target, making it available as an installation target.
2. The initial partitioning screen presents you with an Advanced storage configuration button that allows you to add iSCSI target information like the discovery IP-address. Anaconda will probe the given IP-address and log in to any targets that it finds. See [7.19 “Advanced Storage Options”](#) for the details that you can specify for iSCSI targets.

While anaconda uses `iscsiadm` to find and log into iSCSI targets, `iscsiadm` automatically stores any information about these targets in its iSCSI database. Anaconda then copies this database to the installed system and marks any iSCSI targets not used for `/` so that the system will automatically log in to them when it starts. If `/` is placed on an iSCSI target, `initrd` will log into this target and anaconda does not include this target in start up scripts to avoid multiple attempts to log into the same target.

If `/` is placed on an iSCSI target, anaconda sets NetworkManager to ignore any network interfaces that were active during the installation process. These interfaces will also be configured by `initrd` when the system starts. If NetworkManager were to reconfigure these interfaces, the system would lose its connection to `/`.

### B.2. iSCSI disks during start up

iSCSI-related events might occur at a number of points while the system starts:

1. The `init` script in the `initrd` will log in to iSCSI targets used for `/` (if any). This is done using the `iscsistart` utility (which can do this without requiring `iscsid` to run).

2. When the root filesystem has been mounted and the various service initscripts get run, the iscsid initscript will get called. This script will then start iscsid if any iSCSI targets are used for /, or if any targets in the iSCSI database are marked to be logged in to automatically.
3. After the classic network service script has been run (or would have been run if enabled) the iscsi initscript will run. If the network is accessible, this will log in to any targets in the iSCSI database which are marked to be logged in to automatically. If the network is not accessible, this script will exit quietly.
4. When using NetworkManager to access the network (instead of the classic network service script), NetworkManager will call the iscsi initscript. See: `/etc/NetworkManager/dispatcher.d/04-iscsi`



### 重要

Because NetworkManager is installed in /usr, you cannot use it to configure network access if /usr is on network-attached storage such as an iSCSI target.

If iscsid is not needed as the system starts, it will not start automatically. If you start iscsiadm, iscsiadm will start iscsid in turn.

---

## 附录 C. 磁盘加密向导

### C.1. 什么是块设备加密？

Block device encryption protects the data on a block device by encrypting it. To access the device's decrypted contents, a user must provide a passphrase or key as authentication. This provides additional security beyond existing OS security mechanisms in that it protects the device's contents even if it has been physically removed from the system.

### C.2. 使用dm-crypt/LUKS加密块设备

**LUKS**<sup>1</sup> (Linux Unified Key Setup) is a specification for block device encryption. It establishes an on-disk format for the data, as well as a passphrase/key management policy.

LUKS uses the kernel device mapper subsystem via the dm-crypt module. This arrangement provides a low-level mapping that handles encryption and decryption of the device's data. User-level operations, such as creating and accessing encrypted devices, are accomplished through the use of the cryptsetup utility.

#### C.2.1. LUKS概要

LUKS干什么：

LUKS加密整个块设备

LUKS is thereby well-suited for protecting the contents of mobile devices such as:

可移动存储介质

笔记本磁盘驱动器

The underlying contents of the encrypted block device are arbitrary.

This makes it useful for encrypting swap devices.

This can also be useful with certain databases that use specially formatted block devices for data storage.

LUKS uses the existing device mapper kernel subsystem.

This is the same subsystem used by LVM, so it is well tested.

LUKS提供密码增强。

这可以防止字典攻击。

LUKS devices contain multiple key slots.

This allows users to add backup keys/passphrases.

LUKS 做什么：

LUKS is not well-suited for applications requiring many (more than eight) users to have distinct access keys to the same device.

LUKS is not well-suited for applications requiring file-level encryption.

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://luks.endorphin.org>

### C.2.2. 安装完成后我如何访问加密的设备? (系统启动)

During system startup you will be presented with a passphrase prompt. After the correct passphrase has been provided the system will continue to boot normally. If you used different passphrases for multiple encrypted devices you may need to enter more than one passphrase during the startup.



#### 提示

Consider using the same passphrase for all encrypted block devices in a given system. This will simplify system startup and you will have fewer passphrases to remember. Just make sure you choose a good passphrase!

### C.2.3. 选择一个安全性好的密码

While dm-crypt/LUKS supports both keys and passphrases, the anaconda installer only supports the use of passphrases for creating and accessing encrypted block devices during installation.

LUKS does provide passphrase strengthening but it is still a good idea to choose a good (meaning "difficult to guess") passphrase. Note the use of the term "passphrase", as opposed to the term "password". This is intentional. Providing a phrase containing multiple words to increase the security of your data is important.

## C.3. 在Anaconda中创建加密块设备

You can create encrypted devices during system installation. This allows you to easily configure a system with encrypted partitions.

To enable block device encryption, check the "Encrypt System" checkbox when selecting automatic partitioning or the "Encrypt" checkbox when creating an individual partition, software RAID array, or logical volume. After you finish partitioning, you will be prompted for an encryption passphrase. This passphrase will be required to access the encrypted devices. If you have pre-existing LUKS devices and provided correct passphrases for them earlier in the install process the passphrase entry dialog will also contain a checkbox. Checking this checkbox indicates that you would like the new passphrase to be added to an available slot in each of the pre-existing encrypted block devices.



#### 提示

Checking the "Encrypt System" checkbox on the "Automatic Partitioning" screen and then choosing "Create custom layout" does not cause any block devices to be encrypted automatically.



#### 提示

可使用kickstart为每个新加密的块设备设置单独的密码。

### C.3.1. 可以加密什么类型的块设备?

大多类型的块设备都可使用LUKS加密。从anaconda中你可以加密分区，LVM物理卷，LVM逻辑卷以及软RAID阵列。

### C.3.2. Anaconda块设备加密支持的限制

This section is about Anaconda's Block Device Encryption Support

## C.4. 安装完成后在系统上创建加密的块设备。

加密块设备可在安装完成后创建和配置。

### C.4.1. 创建块设备

通过parted, pvcreate, lvcreate和mdadm创建你要加密的块设备。

### C.4.2. 可选项：使用随机数据填充设备

加密前使用随机数据填充 <设备> (eg: /dev/sda3)可大大提高加密强度。然后这会花很长的时间。



#### Warning

以下的命令将会破坏该设备上的任何已存在数据。

最好的方法，就是很高质量的随机数据但是时间较长(多数系统上一个G需要几分钟):

```
dd if=/dev/urandom of=<device>
```

最快的方法，低质量的随机数据:

```
badblocks -c 10240 -s -w -t random -v <device>
```

### C.4.3. 将设备格式化为dm-crypt/LUKS加密设备



#### Warning

以下命令将破坏该设备上所有已有数据。

```
cryptsetup luksFormat <device>
```



#### 提示

要了解更多信息，请阅读cryptsetup(8)的man页面。

输入两次密码后设备将格式化，之后就可使用了。使用如下命令进行验证:

```
cryptsetup isLuks <device> && echo Success
```

使用以下命令来查看设备的加密信息：

```
cryptsetup luksDump <device>
```

#### C.4.4. 创建一个映射来允许访问设备中未加密的内容

要访问设备中未加密的内容，必须使用内核device-mapper做个映射。

为映射起个有实际意义的名字是很有用的。LUKS为每个设备都提供了UUID(Universally Unique Identifier)。这个与设备名不同(例如/dev/sda3)，在LUKS头保持完好时，UUID会保持不变。使用以下命令查找LUKS设备的UUID：

```
cryptsetup luksUUID <device>
```

An example of a reliable, informative and unique mapping name would be luks-<uuid>, where <uuid> is replaced with the device's LUKS UUID (eg: luks-50ec957a-5b5a-47ee-85e6-f8085bbc97a8). This naming convention might seem unwieldy but is it not necessary to type it often.

```
cryptsetup luksOpen <device> <name>
```

There should now be a device node, /dev/mapper/<name>, which represents the decrypted device. This block device can be read from and written to like any other unencrypted block device.

To see some information about the mapped device, use the following command:

```
dmsetup info <name>
```



#### 提示

For more information, read the dmsetup(8) man page.

#### C.4.5. Create filesystems on the mapped device, or continue to build complex storage structures using the mapped device

Use the mapped device node (/dev/mapper/<name>) as any other block device. To create an ext2 filesystem on the mapped device, use the following command:

```
mke2fs /dev/mapper/<name>
```

To mount this filesystem on /mnt/test, use the following command:



#### 重要

The directory /mnt/test must exist before executing this command.




```
mount /dev/mapper/<name> /mnt/test
```

### C.4.6. Add the mapping information to `/etc/crypttab`

In order for the system to set up a mapping for the device, an entry must be present in the `/etc/crypttab` file. If the file doesn't exist, create it and change the owner and group to root (root:root) and change the mode to 0744. Add a line to the file with the following format:

```
<name> <device> none
```

The `<device>` field should be given in the form "UUID=<luks\_uuid>", where `<luks_uuid>` is the LUKS uuid as given by the command `cryptsetup luksUUID <device>`. This ensures the correct device will be identified and used even if the device node (eg: `/dev/sda5`) changes.



**提示**  
For details on the format of the `/etc/crypttab` file, read the `crypttab(5)` man page.

### C.4.7. Add an entry to `/etc/fstab`

Add an entry to `/etc/fstab`. This is only necessary if you want to establish a persistent association between the device and a mountpoint. Use the decrypted device, `/dev/mapper/<name>` in the `/etc/fstab` file.

In many cases it is desirable to list devices in `/etc/fstab` by UUID or by a filesystem label. The main purpose of this is to provide a constant identifier in the event that the device name (eg: `/dev/sda4`) changes. LUKS device names in the form of `/dev/mapper/luks-<luks_uuid>` are based only on the device's LUKS UUID, and are therefore guaranteed to remain constant. This fact makes them suitable for use in `/etc/fstab`.



**Title**  
For details on the format of the `/etc/fstab` file, read the `fstab(5)` man page.

## C.5. Common Post-Installation Tasks

The following sections are about common post-installation tasks.

### C.5.1. Set a randomly generated key as an additional way to access an encrypted block device

These sections are about generating keys and adding keys.

#### C.5.1.1. Generate a key

This will generate a 256-bit key in the file `$HOME/keyfile`.

```
dd if=/dev/urandom of=$HOME/keyfile bs=32 count=1
```

```
chmod 600 $HOME/keyfile
```

### C.5.1.2. Add the key to an available keyslot on the encrypted device

```
cryptsetup luksAddKey <device> ~/keyfile
```

### C.5.2. Add a new passphrase to an existing device

```
cryptsetup luksAddKey <device>
```

After being prompted for any one of the existing passprases for authentication, you will be prompted to enter the new passphrase.

### C.5.3. Remove a passphrase or key from a device

```
cryptsetup luksRemoveKey <device>
```

You will be prompted for the passphrase you wish to remove and then for any one of the remaining passphrases for authentication.

---

## 附录 D. Understanding LVM

LVM (Logical Volume Management) partitions provide a number of advantages over standard partitions. LVM partitions are formatted as *physical volumes*. One or more physical volumes are combined to form a *volume group*. Each volume group's total storage is then divided into one or more *logical volumes*. The logical volumes function much like standard partitions. They have a file system type, such as ext4, and a mount point.



### The /boot Partition and LVM

The boot loader cannot read LVM volumes. You must make a standard, non-LVM disk partition for your /boot partition.

To understand LVM better, imagine the physical volume as a pile of *blocks*. A block is simply a storage unit used to store data. Several piles of blocks can be combined to make a much larger pile, just as physical volumes are combined to make a volume group. The resulting pile can be subdivided into several smaller piles of arbitrary size, just as a volume group is allocated to several logical volumes.

An administrator may grow or shrink logical volumes without destroying data, unlike standard disk partitions. If the physical volumes in a volume group are on separate drives or RAID arrays then administrators may also spread a logical volume across the storage devices.

You may lose data if you shrink a logical volume to a smaller capacity than the data on the volume requires. To ensure maximum flexibility, create logical volumes to meet your current needs, and leave excess storage capacity unallocated. You may safely grow logical volumes to use unallocated space, as your needs dictate.



### LVM and the Default Partition Layout

By default, the installation process creates / and swap partitions within LVM volumes, with a separate /boot partition.



---

## 附录 E. GRUB 引导装载程序

When a computer running Linux is turned on, the operating system is loaded into memory by a special program called a *boot loader*. A boot loader usually exists on the system's primary hard drive (or other media device) and has the sole responsibility of loading the Linux kernel with its required files or (in some cases) other operating systems into memory.

This appendix discusses commands and configuration options for the GRUB boot loader included with Fedora for the x86 architecture.

### E.1. GRUB

*GNU GRand Unified Boot loader* (GRUB) 是允许在系统引导时选择已安装的操作系统或内核的程序。它也允许用户把参数传给内核。

#### E.1.1. GRUB 和 x86 引导过程

这部分内容讨论了在引导 x86 系统时 GRUB 扮演的特殊角色。要了解引导过程的全貌，请参考 [F.2](#) “[GRUB 的引导过程](#)”。

GRUB 在下列阶段把它自己载入内存：

1. *The Stage 1 or primary boot loader is read into memory by the BIOS from the MBR*<sup>1</sup>. The primary boot loader exists on less than 512 bytes of disk space within the MBR and is capable of loading either the Stage 1.5 or Stage 2 boot loader.
2. **1.5** 某些硬件在进入第二阶段引导装载程序之前，要求一个中间步骤。当 `/boot/` 分区处于硬盘的 1024 柱面之上，或者使用 LBA 模式时，就会发生。第 1.5 阶段引导装载程序位于 `/boot/` 分区或者是 MBR 和 `/boot/` 分区的一小部分空间里。
3. 第二级引导装载程序显示 GRUB 菜单和命令环境。这个界面允许用户选择引导哪个内核或操作系统、把参数传递给内核、或者查看系统参数。
4. `/boot/sysroot/` 一旦 GRUB 决定启动哪个操作系统或者内核，它就会把它载入内存并把机器的控制权交给那个操作系统。

The method used to boot Linux is called *direct loading* because the boot loader loads the operating system directly. There is no intermediary between the boot loader and the kernel.

其他操作系统使用的引导过程可能有所不同。例如，Microsoft® Windows® 操作系统，以及其他的操作系统，都使用 *chain loading* 的方式装载。在这种方式下，MBR 指向存放操作系统的分区的第一个扇区，找到所需的文件来引导操作系统。

GRUB 支持 *direct* 和 *chain* 装载这两种方式，这使它几乎可以引导任何操作系统。



#### Warning

在安装过程中，微软的 DOS 和 Windows 安装程序完全覆盖了 MBR（主引导分区），这会毁坏任何现有的引导装载程序。如果要创建一个双重引导系统，你最好先安装微软的操作系统。

## E.1.2. GRUB 的特征

GRUB 包含几个优于 x86 体系结构的其他引导装载程序的特征。下面是这些重要特征的一个列表：

**GRUB x86 pre-OS** 这个特征给予了用户用指定选项装载操作系统或收集系统信息最大的灵活性。多年以来，很多非 x86 体系结构的系统已经采用了先于操作系统（pre-OS）的环境，且允许系统从命令行引导。

**GRUB Logical Block Addressing LBA** LBA 把用来寻找文件的寻址转换模式用于硬盘 firmware，它被用在许多 IDE 和所有的 SCSI 硬盘设备里。在 LBA 出现之前，引导装载程序可能受到 BIOS 对 1024 柱面的限制，BIOS 不能够寻找在磁盘的 1024 柱面之后的文件。只要系统 BIOS 支持 LBA 模式，LBA 就允许 GRUB 从 1024 柱面限制之后的分区引导操作系统。大部分新的 BIOS 半本都支持 LBA 模式。

**GRUB ext2** 这个功能允许 **GRUB** 访问它的配置文件 `/boot/grub/grub.conf`，在每次系统引导时如果配置有修改，用户就不需要把第一阶段引导装载程序的新版本写入到主引导分区（MBR）里。用户唯一需要在主引导分区重新安装 GRUB 的时候，就是当 `/boot/` 分区在磁盘上的物理位置已经改变的时候。关于在主引导分区里安装 GRUB 的详情，请参考 [E.2 “Installing GRUB”](#)。

## E.2. Installing GRUB

如果在安装过程中 GRUB 没有被安装，它也可以在之后安装。一旦被安装，它自动就变为缺省的引导装载程序。

Before installing GRUB, make sure to use the latest GRUB package available or use the GRUB package from the installation CD-ROMs.

一旦 GRUB 软件包被安装了，打开一个根 shell 并运行 `/sbin/grub-install <location>` 命令，在这里 `<location>` 是 GRUB 第一阶段引导装载程序安装的位置。例如，下面的命令把 GRUB 安装到主 IDE 总线上的主 IDE 设备的 MBR 里：

```
/sbin/grub-install /dev/hda
```

下次系统引导的时候，GRUB 图形化引导装载程序菜单会在内核载入内存之前出现。



### Important

If GRUB is installed on a RAID 1 array, the system may become unbootable in the event of disk failure.

## E.3. GRUB 术语

在使用 GRUB 之前，需要了解的最重要的一件事情就是它怎样引用设备，如硬盘和分区。这些信息在配置 GRUB 来引导多个操作系统时尤为重要。

### E.3.1. 设备名

当用 GRUB 引用特定的设备时，可以使用下面的格式（注意，从语法上来讲，括号和逗号都是非常重要的）：

**(<type-of-device><bios-device-number>,<partition-number>)**

`<type-of-device>` 指定 GRUB 引导的设备类型。最常用的两个选项是代表硬盘的 `hd` 或代表 3.5 寸磁盘的 `fd`。另外一个较少使用的设备类型是代表网络磁盘的 `nd`。关于配置 GRUB 从网络引导的说明，你可以访问 <http://www.gnu.org/software/grub/manual/>。

`<bios-device-number>` 是 BIOS 设备号码。主 IDE 硬盘编号为 0，次 IDE 硬盘则编号为 1。这个规则和用于内核设备的基本一样。例如，内核所使用的 `hda` 里的 `a` 和 GRUB 所使用的 `hd0` 里的 0 类似，而 `hdb` 里的 `b` 和 `hd1` 里的 1 类似，诸如此类。

`<partition-number>` 指定设备上的分区的号码。如同 `<bios-device-number>`，很多类型的分区都是从 0 开始编号的。然而，BSD 分区却由字母指定，如 `a` 对应 0，`b` 对应 1，等等。



**Note**  
GRUB 下的设备编号总是从 0，而不是从 1 开始的。这是新用户最常犯的错误之一。

例如，如果系统有一个以上的硬盘，GRUB 会用 `(hd0)` 来引用第一个硬盘，用 `(hd1)` 来引用第二个硬盘。GRUB 用 `(hd0,0)` 引用第一个硬盘里的第一个分区，用 `(hd1,2)` 引用第二个硬盘里的第三个分区。

GRUB 通常使用下面的规则来命名设备和分区：

不管系统的硬盘驱动器是 IDE 还是 SCSI，所有的硬盘驱动器都用字母 `hd` 开始。而 `fd` 用来指定 3.5 寸软盘。

要指定整个设备而不是某个分区，可以把分区号码和逗号都去掉。当 GRUB 为某个特定磁盘配置主引导分区时，这很重要。例如，`(hd0)` 指定了第一个设备上的主引导分区，`(hd3)` 指定第四个设备上的主引导分区。

如果系统有多个驱动器设备，在 BIOS 里设置引导顺序就很重要。如果系统只有 IDE 或 SCSI 驱动器，这当然很简单，但是如果两种设备都有的话，使存放引导分区的驱动器先被访问就很关键了。

### E.3.2. 文件名和块列表 (Blocklist)

当在 GRUB 里输入命令来引用文件时（如菜单列表），你必须在设备和分区号码后面紧接着指定绝对文件路径。

下面演示了这样的命令的结构：

```
<device-type><device-number>,<partition-number></path/to/file>
```

在这个例子里，用 `hd`，`fd` 或 `nd` 替换 `<device-type>`。用整数来替换设备的 `<device-number>`。用相对于设备顶层的绝对路径来替换 `</path/to/file>`。

你也可能在 GRUB 里指定实际上并不在文件系统里的文件，如出现在分区的起始块里的 `chain` 装载程序。要装载这样的文件，可以使用指定文件在分区里所在的块的 `blocklist`。既然文件通常由几个不同块的集合组成，块列表使用了特殊的语法。每个包含文件的块都由块的位移量来指定，后面跟着基于这个位移点的块的数量。块位移用逗号隔开的列表里依次列出。

以下是一个块列表的例子：

```
0+50,100+25,200+1
```

这个例子指定了从分区的第一个块开始的文件，它使用了块 0 到 49、100 到 124 以及 200。

当使用 GRUB 来装载要求 chain 装载的操作系统时，知道怎样去编写块列表是很有用的。如果从块 0 开始的话，你可以忽略块的位移量。例如，第一个硬盘里的第一分区的 chain 装载文件会有下面的名字：

```
(hd0,0)+1
```

下面是在 GRUB 命令行上以根用户设定正确设备和分区之后指定块列表的 chainloader 命令：

```
chainloader +1
```

### E.3.3. 根文件系统和 GRUB

术语 *root file system* 的使用在 GRUB 里有不同的含义。请记住：GRUB 的根文件系统和 Linux 的根文件系统毫无关系。

GRUB 根文件系统是指定设备的最顶层。例如，映像文件 (hd0,0)/grub/splash.xpm.gz 位于 (hd0,0) 分区（实际上是系统的 /boot/ 分区）的顶层（或根）的 /grub/ 目录。

然后，以内核文件的位置为选项的 kernel 命令被执行。一旦 Linux 内核被引导，它设立 Linux 用户所熟悉的根文件系统。之前的 GRUB 根文件系统和它所挂载的文件系统都不再被使用；它们只在引导内核文件时存在。

详情请参考 [E.5 “GRUB ”](#) 里的 root 和 kernel 命令。

## E.4. GRUB 界面

GRUB 提供三个具有不同层次的功能的界面。每个界面都允许用户引导 Linux 内核或者其他操作系统。

这些界面如下所示：



**Note**  
只有在 GRUB 菜单消失前的 3 秒之内按任意键，才可以进入下面的 GRUB 界面。

这是安装程序配置 GRUB 时显示的缺省界面。操作系统或者预配置内核的列表会出现并按名字排序。用箭头键可以选择缺省选项之外的其他选项，然后按 Enter 键来引导它。如果你什么都不做，在超过预定时间后 GRUB 会装载缺省选项。

按 e 键来进入条目编辑器界面，或者按 c 键来装载命令行界面。

请参阅 [E.6 “GRUB ”](#) 来了解这个界面的配置的详情。

要访问菜单条目编辑器，你可以在引导装载程序里按 e 键。然后屏幕会显示条目的 GRUB 命令行，在引导操作系统之前，用户可以修改这些命令行，例如添加命令行（o 在当前行之后插入新的一行，而 O 则在当前行之前插入新命令行）、编辑命令行（e）或者删除命令行（d）。

在完成了所有的修改后，按 b 键可以执行该命令行并引导操作系统。按 Esc 可以取消所有的修改并重新载入标准的菜单界面。按 c 键可以装载命令行界面。





### Note

关于用 GRUB 菜单条目编辑器修改运行级别的更多信息，请参考 [E.7](#) “ ”。

命令行界面是最基本的 GRUB 界面，但它也是可以最大限度控制的界面。你可以输入任何相关的 GRUB 命令并按 Enter 键来执行它。这个界面提供一些高级的类似于 shell 的特征，包括按 Tab 键依据上下文来自动完成命令，Ctrl 键组合如 Ctrl+a 来移动到一行的起始处、以及 Ctrl+e 移动到一行的末尾。此外，就象在 bash shell 里一样，你也可以使用箭头键、Home、End 和 Delete 键。

请参考 [E.5](#) “GRUB ” 里关于一些常用命令的用法。

## E.4.1. 界面装载顺序

当 GRUB 装载它的第二阶段引导装载程序时，它首先搜寻配置文件。找到后，菜单界面绕过屏幕 (bypass screen) 就会显示。如果你在 3 秒之内按了任何键，GRUB 将建立一个菜单列表并显示菜单界面。如果没有按任何键，GRUB 菜单里的缺省内核条目将会被使用。

如果没有找到配置文件，或者配置文件是不可读的，GRUB 将装载命令行界面，这允许用户输入命令来完成引导过程。

如果配置文件是无效的，GRUB 会打印出错误并要求输入。这可以帮助用户找到问题的确切原因。按任何键来重新载入菜单界面，你可以编辑菜单选项并根据 GRUB 报告的错误来进行更正。如果更正失败的话，GRUB 又将报告错误并重新载入菜单界面。

## E.5. GRUB 命令

GRUB 在它的命令行界面里提供大量的有用的命令。有些命令接受参数选项；这些选项应该和命令以及其他选项用空格分隔开。

下面是一个有用的命令的列表：

**boot** — 引导操作系统或者最后被装载的 chain 装载程序。

**chainloader </path/to/file>** — 把指定的文件装载为 chain 装载程序。如果这个文件位于指定分区的第一个扇区，则使用块列表标记 +1 来代替文件名。

下面是 chainloader 命令的一个示例：

```
chainloader +1
```

**displaymem** — 根据 BIOS 信息，显示当前的内存使用情况。这对在引导前确认系统有多少内存很有用。

**initrd </path/to/initrd>** — Enables users to specify an initial RAM disk to use when booting. An initrd is necessary when the kernel needs certain modules in order to boot properly, such as when the root partition is formatted with the ext3 or ext4 file system.

下面是 initrd 命令的一个示例：

```
initrd /initrd-2.6.8-1.523.img
```

`install <stage-1> <install-disk> <stage-2> p <config-file>` — 把 GRUB 安装到系统的主引导分区里。

**<stage-1>** — 指定可以找到第一阶段引导装载程序映像的设备、分区和文件，如 `(hd0,0)/grub/stage1`。

**<install-disk>** — 指定用来安装第一阶段引导装载程序映像应该的磁盘，如 `(hd0)`。

**<stage-2>** — 把第二阶段引导装载程序的位置传递给第一阶段引导装载程序，如 `(hd0,0)/grub/stage2`。

**p <config-file>** — 这个选项告诉 `install` 命令来寻找 **<config-file>** 所指定的菜单配置文件，如 `(hd0,0)/grub/grub.conf`。



### Warning

`install` 命令覆盖主引导分区里任何已有的信息。

`kernel </path/to/kernel> <option-1> <option-N> ...` — 指定引导操作系统时装载的内核文件。用相对于 `root` 命令指定的分区的绝对路径来替换 `</path/to/kernel>`。用 Linux 内核选项来替换 `<option-1>`，如 `root=/dev/VolGroup00/LogVol00` 可以指定系统根分区所在的设备。你可以用空格隔开传入内核的多个选项。

下面是 `kernel` 命令的一个示例：

```
kernel /vmlinuz-2.6.8-1.523 ro root=/dev/VolGroup00/LogVol00
```

前面例子中的选项指定了 Linux 的根文件系统位于 `hda5` 分区。

`root (<device-type><device-number>,<partition>)` — 配置 GRUB 的根分区，如 `(hd0,0)`，并挂载这个分区。

下面是 `root` 命令的一个示例：

```
root (hd0,0)
```

`rootnoverify (<device-type><device-number>,<partition>)` — 配置 GRUB 的根分区，就象 `root` 命令一样，但不挂载此分区。

你还可以找到其他一些可用的命令；键入 `help --all` 来获取命令的完整列表。关于所有 GRUB 命令的描述，请参考 <http://www.gnu.org/software/grub/manual/> 上的在线文档。

## E.6. GRUB 菜单配置文件

配置文件 (`/boot/grub/grub.conf`) 用来创建 GRUB 菜单界面里的操作系统引导列表，它允许用户选择预先设置的一组命令。你可以使用 E.5 “GRUB ” 里的命令，以及仅在配置文件里可用的特殊命令。

### E.6.1. 配置文件结构

GRUB 菜单界面配置文件是 `/boot/grub/grub.conf`。为菜单界面设置全局参数的命令位于这个文件的顶部，后面的内容是菜单里列出的每个操作系统或者内核。

The following is a very basic GRUB menu configuration file designed to boot either Fedora or Microsoft Windows Vista:

```
default=0
timeout=10
splashimage=(hd0,0)/grub/splash.xpm.gz
hiddenmenu
title Fedora (2.6.27.19-170.2.35.fc10.i686)
root (hd0,1)
kernel /vmlinuz-2.6.27.19-170.2.35.fc10.i686 ro root=UUID=04a07c13-e6bf-6d5a-b207-002689545705 rhgb
quiet
initrd /initrd-2.6.27.19-170.2.35.fc10.i686.img

# section to load Windows
title Windows
rootnoverify (hd0,0)
chainloader +1
```

This file configures GRUB to build a menu with Fedora as the default operating system and sets it to autoboot after 10 seconds. Two sections are given, one for each operating system entry, with commands specific to the system disk partition table.



#### Note

注意，`default` 被设置为一个整数。这指定了 GRUB 配置文件里的第一个 `title` 行。在前面的例子里，如果要把 Windows 设置为缺省选项，你可以把 `default=0` 修改为 `default=1`。

配置 GRUB 菜单配置文件来引导多个操作系统超出了本章的范围。请参考 [E.8](#) “ ” 来获取其他的资源的列表。

### E.6.2. 配置文件指令

下面是 GRUB 菜单配置文件里常用的指令：

`chainloader </path/to/file>` — 把指定文件装载为 `chain` 装载程序。用 `chain` 装载程序的绝对路径替换 `</path/to/file>`。如果这个文件位于指定分区的第一个扇区，你可以使用块列表标记 `+1`。

`color <normal-color> <selected-color>` — 允许在菜单里使用特定的颜色，如配置前景色和背景色。你可以使用简单的颜色名称，如 `red/black`。例如：

```
color red/black green/blue
```

`default=<integer>` — 用在菜单界面超时后装载的缺省条目标题的序号来替换 `<integer>`。

`fallback=<integer>` — 用在第一次尝试失败后所用的条目标题的序号来替换 `<integer>`。

`hiddenmenu` — 当超过 `timeout` 所指定的时间后，阻止 GRUB 菜单界面的显示以及装载 `default` 条目。用户可以按 `Esc` 键来查看标准 GRUB 菜单。

`initrd </path/to/initrd>` — 使用户可以指定在引导时所用的初始 RAM 磁盘文件。用初始 RAM 磁盘文件的绝对路径来替换 `</path/to/initrd>`。

`kernel </path/to/kernel> <option-1> <option-N>` — 指定引导操作系统时装载的内核文件。用 `root` 指令所指定的分区的绝对路径来替换 `</path/to/kernel>`。你可以在内核装载时传入多个选项。

`password=<password>` — 阻止不知道密码的用户编辑这个菜单的条目。

另外，你也可以在 `password=<password>` 指令后指定其他的菜单配置文件。在这种情况下，GRUB 会重新启动第二阶段引导装载程序并使用这个菜单配置文件来建立菜单。如果不在这个指令后指定菜单配置文件，拥有密码的用户就可以编辑当前的配置文件。

For more information about securing GRUB, refer to the chapter titled *Workstation Security* in the *Red Hat Enterprise Linux Deployment Guide*.

`root (<device-type><device-number>,<partition>)` — 配置 GRUB 的根分区，如 `(hd0,0)`，并挂载这个分区。

`rootnoverify (<device-type><device-number>,<partition>)` — 配置 GRUB 的根分区，就象 `root` 命令一样，但不挂载此分区。

`timeout=<integer>` — 指定 GRUB 在装载 `default` 指令里设定的条目之前，所等待的以秒为单位的时间间隔。

`splashimage=<path-to-image>` — 指定 GRUB 引导时所使用的闪屏映像文件的位置。

`title group-title` — 指定和用来装载内核或操作系统的特定的一组命令一起使用的标题。

菜单配置文件里的注释用井号（#）开头。

## E.7. 在引导时改变运行级别

Under Fedora, it is possible to change the default runlevel at boot time.

要在引导会话里改变运行级别，使用以下指令：

当 GRUB 菜单绕过屏幕（`bypass screen`）出现时，按任何键来进入 GRUB 菜单（在 3 秒钟之内）。

按 `a` 键可以在 `kernel` 命令后附加选项。

在引导选项行的最后加入 `<space><runlevel>` 来进入相应的运行级别。例如，下面的条目将引导过程初始化至运行级别 3：

```
grub append> ro root=/dev/VolGroup00/LogVol00 rhgb quiet 3
```

## E.8. 其它资料

本章只是对 GRUB 的基本介绍。关于 GRUB 的更多细节，请参考下面的资源。

### E.8.1. 安装了文档

`/usr/share/doc/grub-<version-number>/` — 这个目录包含了很好的使用和配置 GRUB 的信息，在这里，`<version-number>` 对应安装的 GRUB 软件包的版本号。

`info grub` — GRUB `info` 页包含了指南、用户参考手册、程序员参考手册和关于 GRUB 及其用法的 FAQ 文档。

### E.8.2. 有用的网站

<http://www.gnu.org/software/grub/><sup>2</sup> — GNU GRUB 项目的主页。这个网站包含了 GRUB 开发的信息和 FAQ。

<http://kbase.redhat.com/faq/docs/DOC-6864> — Details booting operating systems other than Linux.

### E.8.3. 相关书籍

*Red Hat Enterprise Linux Deployment Guide*; Red Hat, Inc. — The *Workstation Security* chapter explains, in a concise manner, how to secure the GRUB boot loader.



---

## 附录 F. 引导过程、初始化和关闭

An important and powerful aspect of Fedora is the open, user-configurable method it uses for starting the operating system. Users are free to configure many aspects of the boot process, including specifying the programs launched at boot-time. Similarly, system shutdown gracefully terminates processes in an organized and configurable way, although customization of this process is rarely required.

理解引导和关闭的过程不仅可以允许对它们进行自定义，也使和系统启动和关闭相关的故障的解决更为容易。

### F.1. 引导过程

下面是 x86 系统的引导过程的基本阶段：

1. 系统 BIOS 检查系统并启动存放于主硬盘的 MBR 里的第一阶段引导装载程序。
2. 第一阶段引导装载程序把它自己载入内存，并从 /boot/ 分区启动第二阶段引导装载程序。
3. 第二阶段引导装载程序把内核载入到内存，然后按顺序加载任何必需的模块并用只读模式挂载 root 分区。
4. 内核把引导过程的控制权转给 /sbin/init 程序。
5. /sbin/init 加载所有的服务和用户空间工具，然后挂载 /etc/fstab 里列出的所有分区。
6. 刚引导的 Linux 系统把登录屏幕呈现在用户面前。

因为对引导过程的配置比关闭过程的配置更为普遍，本章的余下内容将详细讨论引导过程和怎么样对它进行定制来符合特殊需要。

### F.2. 对引导过程的详细介绍

引导过程的开始阶段根据硬件平台的不同而不同。然而，一旦内核被引导装载程序发现并载入，在所有体系结构的机器上缺省的引导过程就都是一样的。本章主要着重于 x86 体系结构。

#### F.2.1. BIOS

当 x86 被引导后，处理器会在系统内存的末端寻找 `/` `Basic Input/Output System` 或者 `BIOS` 程序并运行它。BIOS 不仅控制引导过程的第一个步骤，也提供外部设备的最底层接口。因此，它被编写为只读的、常驻内存并且是一直可用的。

其他平台所使用的执行底层任务的程序和 x86 系统的 BIOS 是基本一样的。例如，基于 Itanium 的机器使用 `Extensible Firmware Interface (EFI) Shell`。

一旦被装载，BIOS 会测试系统，寻找并检查外设，然后定位可以引导系统的有效设备。通常，它检查所有的软盘驱动器和光盘驱动器来寻找可引导的介质，如果没有找到，它会尝试系统的硬盘。在大多数情况下，寻找驱动器的顺序是由 BIOS 里的设置所控制的，首先是主 IDE 总线上的主 IDE 设备。BIOS 然后把这个设备的第一个扇区的内容载入内存，它被称作 `Master Boot Record` 或者 `MBR`。MBR 只有 512 个字节大小，它包含了被称作引导装载程序的引导机器的代码指令，以及分区表。一旦 BIOS 找到引导装载程序并把它载入到内存里，BIOS 就会把引导过程的控制权交给它。

## F.2.2. 引导装载程序

This section looks at the default boot loader for the x86 platform, GRUB. For more information about configuring and using GRUB, see [E, GRUB](#).

x86 平台的引导装载程序至少分为两个阶段。第一阶段是 MBR 里的小型机器二进制代码。它的唯一作用就是定位第二阶段的引导装载程序并把它的第一部分载入内存。

GRUB has the advantage of being able to read ext2 and ext3<sup>1</sup> partitions and load its configuration file — `/boot/grub/grub.conf` — at boot time. Refer to [E.6 “GRUB”](#) for information on how to edit this file.



### ext4 and Btrfs

The GRUB bootloader does not support the ext4 or Btrfs file systems.



### Note

如果用「Red Hat 更新代理」进行升级，引导装载程序的配置文件将被自动更新。关于 Red Hat Network 的更多信息，你可以访问：<https://rhn.redhat.com/>。

一旦第二阶段的引导装载程序被载入内存，它就会显示一个图形屏幕供用户选择不同操作系统或内核。在这个屏幕上，用户可以用箭头键来选择想引导的操作系统或内核，并按 Enter 键。如果不按任何键，引导装载程序将在一定时间（可配置）后加载缺省的选项。

一旦第二阶段的引导装载程序已经决定引导哪个内核，它就会寻找 `/boot/` 目录里相应的内核二进制代码。内核二进制代码是以下面的格式命名的 — `/boot/vmlinuz-<kernel-version>` file（在这里 **<kernel-version>** 对应转载引导程序的设置里指定的内核版本）。

关于用引导装载程序给内核传入命令行参数的说明，请参考 [E, GRUB](#)。如要在引导装载程序提示下改变运行级别，请参考 [E.7 “](#)

The boot loader then places one or more appropriate *initramfs* images into memory. Next, the kernel decompresses these images from memory to `/sysroot/`, a RAM-based virtual file system, via `cpio`. The *initramfs* is used by the kernel to load drivers and modules necessary to boot the system. This is particularly important if SCSI hard drives are present or if the systems use the ext3 or ext4 file system.

一旦内核和 *initramfs* 映像被载入了内存，引导装载程序就把引导过程的控制权交给内核。

关于 GRUB 引导装载程序的详细信息，请参阅 [E, GRUB](#)。

## F.2.3. 内核

在内核被装载后，它马上初始化和配置机器的内存和附加的各种硬件，其中包括所有的处理器，输入/输出子系统和存储设备。然后，它会在内存里预定的位置寻找压缩的 *initramfs* 映像，并把这些映像直接解压到 `/sysroot/`，然后再装载必要的驱动。其次，在完成 *initramfs* 过程和释放所有磁盘映像曾占据的内存之前，它会初始化和文件系统相关联的虚拟设备，如 LVM 或 software RAID。

然后，内核创建一个根设备，以只读方式挂载根分区，并释放所有未被使用的内存。

<sup>1</sup> GRUB reads ext3 file systems as ext2, disregarding the journal file. Refer to the chapter titled *The ext3 File System* in the *Red Hat Enterprise Linux Deployment Guide* for more information on the ext3 file system.



现在，内核已被载入内存且是可操作的。然而，既然还没有用户应用程序接受有意义的输入，系统还不能做更多的事情。

为了设置用户环境，内核执行 `/sbin/init` 程序。

## F.2.4. /sbin/init 程序

`/sbin/init` 程序（也称作 `init`）协调余下的引导过程并为用户配置环境。

当 `init` 命令启动时，它成为系统里所有自动启动的进程的父进程或者祖父（`grandparent`）进程。首先，它运行 `/etc/rc.d/rc.sysinit` 脚本，这会设置环境路径、启动交换空间、检查文件系统并执行所有系统初始化所需的其他步骤。例如，多数系统会使用时钟，`rc.sysinit` 读入 `/etc/sysconfig/clock` 配置文件来初始化硬件时钟。另外一个例子是，如果有必须初始化的特殊串口进程，`rc.sysinit` 会执行 `/etc/rc.serial` 脚本。

然后，`init` 命令运行 `/etc/inittab` 脚本，这描述了系统在每个 `SysV init` 应该怎样设置。运行级别（`runlevel`）是一个状态，或者，它由 `SysV /etc/rc.d/rc<x>.d/` 目录里列出的服务来定义（在这里，`<x>` 是运行级别）。关于 `SysV init` 运行级别的详情，请参考 [F.4 “SysV Init”](#)。

接着，`init` 命令为系统设置 `source function library`，`/etc/rc.d/init.d/functions`，配置怎样启动、杀死和决定程序的进程号（`PID`）。

`init` 程序根据 `/etc/inittab` 里指定的缺省运行级别遍历合适的 `rc` 目录，启动所有的后台进程。不同的运行级别对应不同的 `rc` 目录。例如，`/etc/rc.d/rc5.d/` 是对应运行级别 5 的目录。

当引导至运行级别 5 时，`init` 程序会遍历 `/etc/rc.d/rc5.d/` 来决定启动和停止哪些进程。

下面是 `/etc/rc.d/rc5.d/` 目录内容的示例：

```
K05innd -> ../init.d/innd
K05saslauthd -> ../init.d/saslauthd
K10dc_server -> ../init.d/dc_server
K10psacct -> ../init.d/psacct
K10radiusd -> ../init.d/radiusd
K12dc_client -> ../init.d/dc_client
K12FreeWnn -> ../init.d/FreeWnn
K12mailman -> ../init.d/mailman
K12mysqld -> ../init.d/mysqld
K15httpd -> ../init.d/httpd
K20netdump-server -> ../init.d/netdump-server
K20rstatd -> ../init.d/rstatd
K20rusersd -> ../init.d/rusersd
K20rwhod -> ../init.d/rwhod
K24irda -> ../init.d/irda
K25squid -> ../init.d/squid
K28amd -> ../init.d/amd
K30spamassassin -> ../init.d/spamassassin
K34dhcrelay -> ../init.d/dhcrelay
K34yppasswdd -> ../init.d/yppasswdd
K35dhcpd -> ../init.d/dhcpd
K35smb -> ../init.d/smb
K35vncserver -> ../init.d/vncserver
K36lisa -> ../init.d/lisa
K45arpwatch -> ../init.d/arpwatch
K45named -> ../init.d/named
```

```
K46radvd -> ../init.d/radvd
K50netdump -> ../init.d/netdump
K50snmpd -> ../init.d/snmpd
K50snmptrapd -> ../init.d/snmptrapd
K50tux -> ../init.d/tux
K50vsftpd -> ../init.d/vsftpd
K54dovecot -> ../init.d/dovecot
K61ldap -> ../init.d/ldap
K65kadmin -> ../init.d/kadmin
K65kprop -> ../init.d/kprop
K65krb524 -> ../init.d/krb524
K65krb5kdc -> ../init.d/krb5kdc
K70aep1000 -> ../init.d/aep1000
K70bcm5820 -> ../init.d/bcm5820
K74ypserv -> ../init.d/ypserv
K74ypxfrd -> ../init.d/ypxfrd
K85mdmpd -> ../init.d/mdmpd
K89netplugd -> ../init.d/netplugd
K99microcode_ctl -> ../init.d/microcode_ctl
S04readahead_early -> ../init.d/readahead_early
S05kudzu -> ../init.d/kudzu
S06cpuspeed -> ../init.d/cpuspeed
S08ip6tables -> ../init.d/ip6tables
S08iptables -> ../init.d/iptables
S09isdn -> ../init.d/isdn
S10network -> ../init.d/network
S12syslog -> ../init.d/syslog
S13irqbalance -> ../init.d/irqbalance
S13portmap -> ../init.d/portmap
S15mdmonitor -> ../init.d/mdmonitor
S15zebra -> ../init.d/zebra
S16bgpd -> ../init.d/bgpd
S16ospf6d -> ../init.d/ospf6d
S16ospfd -> ../init.d/ospfd
S16ripd -> ../init.d/ripd
S16ripngd -> ../init.d/ripngd
S20random -> ../init.d/random
S24pcmcia -> ../init.d/pcmcia
S25netfs -> ../init.d/netfs
S26apmd -> ../init.d/apmd
S27ypbind -> ../init.d/ypbind
S28autofs -> ../init.d/autofs
S40smartd -> ../init.d/smartd
S44acpid -> ../init.d/acpid
S54hpoj -> ../init.d/hpoj
S55cups -> ../init.d/cups
S55sshd -> ../init.d/sshd
S56rawdevices -> ../init.d/rawdevices
S56xinetd -> ../init.d/xinetd
S58ntpd -> ../init.d/ntpd
S75postgresql -> ../init.d/postgresql
```

```

S80sendmail -> ../init.d/sendmail
S85gpm -> ../init.d/gpm
S87iim -> ../init.d/iim
S90canna -> ../init.d/canna
S90crond -> ../init.d/crond
S90xfstools -> ../init.d/xfstools
S95atd -> ../init.d/atd
S96readahead -> ../init.d/readahead
S97messagebus -> ../init.d/messagebus
S97rhnsd -> ../init.d/rhnsd
S99local -> ../rc.local

```

如这个列表所示，所有真正启动和停止服务的脚本都不在 `/etc/rc.d/rc5.d/` 目录里。相反，`/etc/rc.d/rc5.d/` 里所有文件都是指向 `/etc/rc.d/init.d/` 里的脚本的符号链接。在 `rc` 里使用符号链接，通过创建、修改和删除这些链接，就可以对不同的运行级别进行重新配置，而不需要影响它们所引用的真正的脚本。

每个符号链接的名字都以 `K` 或者 `S` 开头。以 `K` 开头的链接是在这个运行级别需要杀死的进程，而以 `S` 开头的链接是需要启动的进程。

首先，`init` 命令通过 `/etc/rc.d/init.d/<command> stop` 命令来停止目录里的所有 `K` 符号链接，在这里，`<command>` 是需要杀死的进程名。然后，它通过 `/etc/rc.d/init.d/<command> start` 来启动所有的 `S` 符号链接。



### Note

在系统完成引导后，你也可以 `root` 登录并执行这些脚本来启动和停止服务。例如，`/etc/rc.d/init.d/httpd stop` 用来停止 Apache HTTP 服务器。

每个符号链接都用数字结尾来指明开始的顺序。可以修改这个数字来决定服务启动或停止的顺序。数字越小，就越早开始运行。有着相同数字的符号链接则按字母顺序来运行。



### Note

`init` 程序最后执行的是 `/etc/rc.d/rc.local` 脚本。这个文件对于定制系统很有用。请参考 [F.3](#) “`rc.local`” 里关于使用 `rc.local` 文件的更多信息。

After the `init` command has progressed through the appropriate `rc` directory for the runlevel, the `/etc/inittab` script forks an `/sbin/mingetty` process for each virtual console (login prompt) allocated to the runlevel. Runlevels 2 through 5 have all six virtual consoles, while runlevel 1 (single user mode) has one, and runlevels 0 and 6 have none. The `/sbin/mingetty` process opens communication pathways to `tty` devices<sup>2</sup>, sets their modes, prints the login prompt, accepts the user's username and password, and initiates the login process.

In runlevel 5, the `/etc/inittab` runs a script called `/etc/X11/prefdm`. The `prefdm` script executes the preferred X display manager<sup>3</sup> — `gdm`, `kdm`, or `xdm`, depending on the contents of the `/etc/sysconfig/desktop` file.

运行完毕后，系统将在运行级别 5 下操作并显示一个登录屏幕。

<sup>2</sup> Refer to the Red Hat Enterprise Linux Deployment Guide for more information about `tty` devices.

<sup>3</sup> Refer to the Red Hat Enterprise Linux Deployment Guide for more information about display managers.

## F.3. 在引导时运行其他的程序

`/etc/rc.d/rc.local` 脚本是在引导时被 `init` 命令执行或者是在切换运行级别时被执行。你可以在这个脚本的最后加入命令来执行某些必需的任务，如启动特殊的服务或初始化设备，而不需要在 `/etc/rc.d/init.d/` 目录里编写复杂的初始化脚本并创建符号链接。

如果串口必须在引导时设置的话，你需要使用 `/etc/rc.serial` 脚本。这个脚本运行 `setserial` 命令来配置系统的串口。详情请参考 `setserial` 帮助页。

## F.4. SysV Init 运行级别

SysV `init` `runlevel` 系统提供一个控制当初始化运行级别时 `init` 启动和停止哪个程序的标准过程。选择 SysV `init` 的原因是易于使用且比传统的 BSD 风格的 `init` 进程更加灵活。

SysV `init` 的配置文件存放在 `/etc/rc.d/` 目录。在这个目录下，有 `rc`、`rc.local`、`rc.sysinit` 和可选的 `rc.serial` 脚本，以及下面的目录：

```
init.d/ rc0.d/ rc1.d/ rc2.d/ rc3.d/ rc4.d/ rc5.d/ rc6.d/
```

The `init.d/` directory contains the scripts used by the `/sbin/init` command when controlling services. Each of the numbered directories represent the six runlevels configured by default under Fedora.

### F.4.1. 运行级别

SysV `init` `runlevel` 的目的是在不同的方式下使用系统。例如，X Window 系统占用一定的系统资源，没有它的话，服务器的运行效率会更高。或者，有时候系统管理员需要在一个更低的运行级别下来执行某些诊断任务，如在运行级别 1 下修复磁盘。

给定运行级别的特征决定了 `init` 启动和停止哪些服务。例如，运行级别 1（单用户模式）停止所有的网路服务，而运行级别 3 则会启动这些服务。通过在某个运行级别下设定启动和停止的服务，`init` 可以快速地改变机器运行的模式而不需要用户手工停止和启动服务。

The following runlevels are defined by default under Fedora:

- 0 — 停止
- 1 — 单用户文本模式
- 2 — 未使用（用户可自定义）
- 3 — 完全的多用户文本模式
- 4 — 为使用（用户可自定义）
- 5 — 完全的多用户图形模式（基于 X Window 的登录屏幕）
- 6 — 重启模式

In general, users operate Fedora at runlevel 3 or runlevel 5 — both full multi-user modes. Users sometimes customize runlevels 2 and 4 to meet specific needs, since they are not used.

系统的缺省运行级别在 `/etc/inittab` 里定义。要找到系统的缺省运行级别，可以在 `/etc/inittab` 靠顶部的地方找如下的一行：

```
id:5:initdefault:
```

如第一个分号后所指出的，这个例子中的缺省运行级别是 5。要改变它，可以根用户来编辑 `/etc/inittab`。



### Warning

编辑 `/etc/inittab` 要非常小心。简单的输入错误就可以导致系统不能启动。如果发生了这样的事情，可以使用启动软盘，进入单用户模式，或者进入救援模式来引导系统并修复这个文件。

For more information on single-user and rescue mode, refer to the chapter titled *Basic System Recovery* in the *Red Hat Enterprise Linux Deployment Guide*.

通过修改引导装载程序传给内核的参数，你也可以在引导时改变缺省的运行级别。关于在引导时修改运行级别的更多信息，请参考 [E.7 “ ”](#)。

## F.4.2. 运行级别工具

配置运行级别的最好方法是使用 *initscript utility*。这些工具可以简化 SysV `init` 目录里的文件的维护任务，使系统管理员不需要直接操作 `/etc/rc.d/` 的子目录下大量的符号链接。

Fedora provides three such utilities:

`/sbin/chkconfig` — `/sbin/chkconfig` 是一个简单的命令行工具，它可以维护 `/etc/rc.d/init.d/` 目录层次结构。

`/usr/sbin/ntsysv` — 基于 `ncurses` 的 `/sbin/ntsysv` 提供一个交互式的文本界面，这比 `chkconfig` 更加容易使用。

Services Configuration Tool — 图形化的 服务配置工具 (Services Configuration Tool) (`system-config-services`) 程序是一个灵活的配置运行级别的工具。

Refer to the chapter titled *Controlling Access to Services* in the *Red Hat Enterprise Linux Deployment Guide* for more information regarding these tools.

## F.5. 关机

To shut down Fedora, the root user may issue the `/sbin/shutdown` command. The `shutdown` man page has a complete list of options, but the two most common uses are:

```
/sbin/shutdown -h now /sbin/shutdown -r now
```

在关闭所有东西后，`-h` 选项会关闭机器，而 `-r` 选项则会重新启动机器。

PAM console users can use the `reboot` and `halt` commands to shut down the system while in runlevels 1 through 5. For more information about PAM console users, refer to the *Red Hat Enterprise Linux Deployment Guide*.

如果计算机没有自己关闭电源，在有信息提示系统已经关闭之前，请不要关掉计算机电源。

如果没有看到这个信息，表示系统还没有卸载所有硬盘分区，此时关机有可能会导导致文件系统崩溃。



---

## 附录 G. 其他技术文档

This document provides a reference for using the Fedora installation software, known as anaconda. To learn more about anaconda, visit the project Web page: <http://www.fedoraproject.org/wiki/Anaconda>.

anaconda 和 Fedora 系统使用相同的软件组件集合。关键技术的详细信息，请访问下面列表的网站：

### 引导加载程序

Fedora uses the GRUB boot loader. Refer to <http://www.gnu.org/software/grub/> for more information.

### 磁盘分区

Fedora uses parted to partition disks. Refer to <http://www.gnu.org/software/parted/> for more information.

### 存储管理

Logical Volume Management (LVM) provides administrators with a range of facilities to manage storage. By default, the Fedora installation process formats drives as LVM volumes. Refer to <http://www.tldp.org/HOWTO/LVM-HOWTO/> for more information.

### 音频支持

The Linux kernel used by Fedora incorporates PulseAudio audio server. For more information about PulseAudio, refer to the project documentation: <http://www.pulseaudio.org/wiki/Documentation>.

### 图形系统

Both the installation system and Fedora use the Xorg suite to provide graphical capabilities. Components of Xorg manage the display, keyboard and mouse for the desktop environments that users interact with. Refer to <http://www.x.org/> for more information.

### 远程显示

Fedora and anaconda include VNC (Virtual Network Computing) software to enable remote access to graphical displays. For more information about VNC, refer to the documentation on the RealVNC Web site: <http://www.realvnc.com/documentation.html>.

### 命令行界面

By default, Fedora uses the GNU bash shell to provide a command-line interface. The GNU Core Utilities complete the command-line environment. Refer to <http://www.gnu.org/software/bash/bash.html> for more information on bash. To learn more about the GNU Core Utilities, refer to <http://www.gnu.org/software/coreutils/>.

### 远程系统访问

Fedora incorporates the OpenSSH suite to provide remote access to the system. The SSH service enables a number of functions, which include access to the command-line from other systems, remote command execution, and network file transfers. During the installation process anaconda may use the scp feature of OpenSSH to transfer crash reports to remote systems. Refer to the OpenSSH Web site for more information: <http://www.openssh.com/>.

#### 访问控制

SELinux provides Mandatory Access Control (MAC) capabilities that supplement the standard Linux security features. Refer to the SELinux Project Pages for more information: <http://docs.fedoraproject.org/selinux-guide>.

#### 防火墙

The Linux kernel used by Fedora incorporates the netfilter framework to provide firewall features. The Netfilter project website provides documentation for both netfilter, and the iptables administration facilities: <http://netfilter.org/documentation/index.html>.

#### 软件安装

Fedora uses yum to manage the RPM packages that make up the system. Refer to <http://docs.fedoraproject.org/yum/> for more information.

#### Virtualization

Virtualization provides the capability to simultaneously run multiple operating systems on the same computer. Fedora also includes tools to install and manage the secondary systems on a Fedora host. You may select virtualization support during the installation process, or at any time thereafter. Refer to <http://www.fedoraproject.org/wiki/Tools/Virtualization> for more information.



---

# 附录 H. Contributors and production methods

## H.1. 贡献者

*Fabian Affolter*<sup>1</sup> (翻译 - 德语)

*Amanpreet Singh Alam*<sup>2</sup> (翻译 - Punjabi)

Jean-Paul Aubry (translator - French)

David Barzilay (translator - Brazilian Portuguese)

*Domingo Becker*<sup>3</sup> (翻译 - 西班牙语)

Subhransu Behera (translator - Oriya)

Micha Bentkowski (翻译 - 波兰语)

Rahul Bhalerao (translator - Marathi)

Runa Bhattacharjee (translator - Bengali (India))

*Teta Bilianou*<sup>4</sup> (翻译 - 希腊语)

Lucas Brausch (翻译 - 德语)

*Hector Daniel Cabrera*<sup>5</sup> (translator - Spanish)

*David Cantrell*<sup>6</sup> (作者 - VNC安装)

Guido Caruso (翻译 - 意大利语)

Guillaume Chardin (翻译 - 法语)

*Nikos Charonitakis*<sup>7</sup> (翻译 - 希腊语)

Chester Cheng (translator - Chinese (Traditional))

Glauca Cintra (translator - Brazilian Portuguese)

Fabien Decroux (翻译 - 法语)

*Hans De Goede*<sup>8</sup> (作者 - iSCSI)

Claudio Rodrigo Pereyra Diaz (translator - Spanish)

*Piotr Drąg*<sup>9</sup> (翻译 - 波兰语)

*Damien Durand*<sup>10</sup> (翻译 - 法语)

*Stuart Ellis*<sup>11</sup> (作者, 编辑)

*Ali Fakoor*<sup>12</sup> (translator - Persian)

Felix I (translator – Tamil)

Tony Fu (translator – Chinese (Simplified))

*Paul W. Frields*<sup>13</sup> (作者, 编辑)

Paul Gampe (translator – Japanese)

Sree Ganesh (translator – Telugu)

*Dimitris Glezos*<sup>14</sup> (翻译 – 希腊语)

*Guillermo Gómez*<sup>15</sup> (translator – Spanish)

*Rui Gouveia*<sup>16</sup> (translator – Portuguese)

Kiyoto James Hashida (translator – Japanese)

Severin Heiniger (translator – German)

Xi Huang (translator – Chinese (Simplified))

Ryuichi Hyugabaru (translator – Japanese)

Jayaradha N (translator – Tamil)

Chris Johnson (writer)

Eunju Kim (translator – Korean)

Michelle J Kim (translator – Korean)

*Miloš Komarčević*<sup>17</sup> (translator – Serbian)

Alexey Kostyuk (translator – Russian)

Daniela Kugelmann (translator – German)

*Rüdiger Landmann*<sup>18</sup> (writer, editor)

*Magnus Larsson*<sup>19</sup> (translator – Swedish)

*Christopherus Laurentius*<sup>20</sup> (translator – Indonesian)

Florent Le Coz (translator – French)

Erick Lemon (writer)

Andy Liu (translator – Chinese (Traditional))

Wei Liu (translator – Chinese (Simplified))

Yelitza Louze (translator – Spanish)

Gan Lu (translator – Chinese (Simplified))

*Igor Miletic*<sup>21</sup> (translator – Serbian)

Noriko Mizumoto (translator – Japanese)

Jeremy W. Mooney (writer)

Enik Nagy (translator – Hungarian)

Igor Nestorovi (translator – Serbian)

*David Nalley*<sup>22</sup> (writer, editor)

John Nguyen (writer)

Manuel Ospina (translator – Spanish)

Janis Ozolins (translator – Latvian)

Ankit Patel (translator – Gujarati)

*Davidson Paulo*<sup>23</sup> (translator – Brazilian Portuguese)

Ani Peter (translator – Malayalam)

*Amitakhya Phukan*<sup>24</sup> (translator – Assamese)

*Silvio Pierro*<sup>25</sup> (translator – Italian)

Micha Pietsch (translator – German)

José Nuno Pires (translator – Portuguese)

Piotr Podgórski (translator – Polish)

Yulia Poyarkova (translator – Russian)

Shankar Prasad (translator – Kannada)

Rajesh Ranjan (translator – Hindi)

*Tommy Reynolds*<sup>26</sup> (writer)

Tim Richert (translator – German)

*Dominik Sandjaja*<sup>27</sup> (translator – German)

*Sharuzzaman Ahmat Raslan*<sup>28</sup> (translator – Malay)

*Mohsen Saeedi*<sup>29</sup> (translator – Persian)

*Tian Shixiong*<sup>30</sup> (translator – Chinese (Simplified))

Audrey Simons (translator – French)

Keld Simonsen (translator – Danish)

*Jared K. Smith*<sup>31</sup> (writer, editor)

Espen Stefansen (translator – Norwegian Bokmål)

*Sulyok Péter*<sup>32</sup> (translator – Hungarian)

*Sümegei Zoltán*<sup>33</sup> (translator – Hungarian)

*Francesco Tombolini*<sup>34</sup> (translator – Italian)

Timo Trinks (translator – German)

*Dimitris Typaldos*<sup>35</sup> (translator – Greek)

Göran Uddeborg (translator – Swedish)

*Michaël Ughetto*<sup>36</sup> (translator – French)

Francesco Valente (translator – Italian)

*Karsten Wade*<sup>37</sup> (writer, editor, publisher)

Sarah Saiying Wang (translator – Chinese (Simplified))

*Geert Warrink*<sup>38</sup> (translator – Dutch)

Elizabeth Ann West (editor)

Tyronne Wickramaratne (translator – Sinhalese)

Ben Wu (translator – Chinese (Traditional))

Xiaofan Yang (translator – Chinese (Simplified))

*Yuan Yijun*<sup>39</sup> (translator – Chinese (Simplified))

*Diego Búrigo Zacarão*<sup>40</sup> (translator – Brazilian Portuguese)

*Izaak Zavaleta*<sup>41</sup> (translator – Spanish)

<http://docs.fedoraproject.org/install-guide/>

## H.2. Production methods

Writers produce the Install Guide directly in DocBook XML in a revision control repository. They collaborate with other subject matter experts during the beta release phase of Fedora to explain the installation process. The editorial team ensures consistency and quality of the finished guide. At this point, the team of translators produces other language versions of the release notes, and then they become available to the general public as part of Fedora. The publication team also makes the guide, and subsequent errata, available via the Web.

---

## 附录 I. Revision History

修订 11.0.0      Wed Apr 01 2009      Hans De Goede [hdegoede@redhat.com](mailto:hdegoede@redhat.com), Paul W. Fields [stickster@gmail.com](mailto:stickster@gmail.com), Ruediger Landmann [r.landmann@redhat.com](mailto:r.landmann@redhat.com), David Nalley [david.nalley@fedoraproject.org](mailto:david.nalley@fedoraproject.org), The anaconda team, Red Hat Engineering Content Services [content-services-list@redhat.com](mailto:content-services-list@redhat.com)

Major update, incorporating material from the *Red Hat Enterprise Linux Installation Guide* and elsewhere, plus fixes for numerous bugs

修订 10.0.1      Mon Feb 16 2009      Ruediger Landmann [r.landmann@redhat.com](mailto:r.landmann@redhat.com)  
Convert to build in Publican

修订 10.0.0      Mon Nov 24 2008      Karsten Wade [kwade@redhat.com](mailto:kwade@redhat.com)  
Build and publish Fedora 10 version

修订 9.9.2      Sat Oct 18 2008      Jared K. Smith [jaredsmith@jaredsmith.net](mailto:jaredsmith@jaredsmith.net)  
Prepare for release of Fedora 10

修订 9.0.2      Fri Jul 25 2008      Paul W. Fields [stickster@gmail.com](mailto:stickster@gmail.com)  
修复不正确的 `livecd` 工具指令

修订 9.0.1      Sat Jun 28 2008      Paul W. Fields [stickster@gmail.com](mailto:stickster@gmail.com)  
很多的臭虫得到修复

修订 9.0.0      Tue May 13 2008      Paul W. Fields [stickster@gmail.com](mailto:stickster@gmail.com)  
添加关于升级一个发行版的信息



---

# 索引

## 符号

- /boot/ 分区
  - recommended partitioning, 58
- /root/install.log
  - 安装日志文件位置, 73
- /var/ 分区
  - recommended partitioning, 58
- 串口 (见 `setserial` 命令)
- 交换分区
  - recommended partitioning, 58
- 交换文件
  - 升级, 178
- 停止, 229
  - (参见 关闭)
- 关闭, 229
  - (参见 停止)
- 内核
  - 在引导过程中的角色, 224
- 删除
  - Fedora, 179
- 升级, 177
  - 添加一个交换文件, 178
- 单用户模式, 176
- 卸装, 179
- 反馈
  - 本手册的联系人, xiii
- 取消安装, 32
- 启动方法
  - USB pen 启动器, 12
  - 引导光盘, 12
- 基本的输入/输出系统 (BIOS) (见 BIOS)
- 安装介质
  - 测试, 14
- 安装日志文件
  - /root/install.log, 73
- 安装软件包, 68
- 密码
  - 引导装载程序, 66
  - 设置根用户, 46
- 引导光盘, 12
  - creating, 12
- 引导装载程序, 64, 213
  - (参见 GRUB)
  - configuration, 64
  - definition of, 213
  - GRUB, 64
  - MBR, 66
  - 在引导分区上安装, 66
  - 密码, 66
  - 引导装载程序密码, 66
  - 挂载点
    - 分区和, 202
  - 救援模式
    - definition of, 173
    - 可用工具, 175
  - 文件系统
    - 格式, 概述, 193
  - 文件系统类型, 62
  - 无磁盘环境
    - DHCP 配置, 102
  - 服务
    - 用 `chkconfig` 进行配置, 229
    - 用 `ntsysv` 进行配置, 229
    - 用服务配置工具 (Services Configuration Tool) 进行配置, 229
  - 服务配置工具 (Services Configuration Tool), 229
    - (参见 服务)
  - 构架, 4
    - 决定中, 4
  - 根 (/) 分区
    - recommended partitioning, 58
  - 用户界面, 文本模式
    - installation program, 26
  - 硬件
    - configuration, 15
  - 磁盘
    - 介质, 17
  - 磁盘分区, 47
  - 磁盘分区工具
    - adding partitions, 61
  - 磁盘空间, 11
  - 程序
    - 在引导时运行, 228
  - 系统恢复, 173
    - 常见问题, 173
    - unable to boot into Fedora, 173
    - 忘记根口令, 173
    - 硬件或软件问题, 173
    - 重新安装引导装载程序, 175
  - 紧急模式, 176
  - 终端, 虚拟, 25
  - 运行级别 (见 `init` 命令)
    - 用 GRUB 进行修改, 216
    - 配置, 229
    - (参见 服务)
  - 运行级别1, 176
  - 重新安装, 177
  - 键盘映射表
    - 选择键盘类型, 38

镜像, 3

驱动程序介质, 17

    使用驱动程序映像, 18

    根据映像创建磁盘, 17

    由他方制作, 17

    由红帽制作, 17

## A

adding partitions, 61

    file system type, 62

Anaconda, 231

array (见 RAID)

ATAPI 光盘

    unrecognized, problems with, 32

automatic partitioning, 47, 47, 50

## B

BIOS

    定义, 223

    (参见 引导过程)

BIOS (基本输入/输出系统), 7

BitTorrent, 4

    seeding, 4

boot loader, 42

    (参见 GRUB)

    upgrading, 42

boot options, 30

    boot.iso, 30

    linux mediacheck, 14

    mediacheck, 30

    serial mode, 30

        UTF-8, 30

    text mode, 30

boot process, 223, 223

    (参见 引导装载程序)

    对于 x86, 223

    直接装载, 213

    链式装载, 213

    阶段, 223, 223

        /sbin/init 命令, 225

        BIOS, 223

        boot loader, 224

        EFI shell, 223

        内核, 224

boot.iso, 12, 30

booting

    installation program

        x86, AMD64 and Intel 64, 29

    单用户模式, 176

    救援模式, 174

    紧急模式, 176

## C

CD-ROM

    ATAPI, 32

        unrecognized, problems with, 32

    IDE, 32

        unrecognized, problems with, 32

    SCSI, 32

    从……安装, 32

    引导光盘, 制作, 12

CD/DVD 介质

    booting, 7

    下载中, 3

        (参见 ISO images)

chkconfig, 229

    (参见 服务)

clock, 44

configuration

    clock, 44, 44

    GRUB, 64

    time zone, 44

    时间, 44

    硬件, 15

## D

DHCP

    PXE 安装, 102

    无磁盘环境, 102

DHCP (动态主机配置协议), 42

dmraid

    installation, 49

domain name, 43

driver diskette, 29

driver disks, 91

## E

EFI shell

    定义, 223

    (参见 引导过程)

ext2 (见 file systems)

ext3 (见 file systems)

ext4 (见 file systems)

extended partitions, 196

Extensible Firmware Interface shell (见 EFI shell)

## F

file systems

    ext2, 33

    ext3, 33

    ext4, 33

    vfat, 33

firewall



---

documentation, 232  
Firstboot, 163  
FTP  
installation, 12

## G

GRUB, 64, 224  
(参见 引导装载程序)  
configuration, 64  
definition of, 213  
documentation, 231  
installing, 214  
其它资料, 220  
    安装了文档, 221  
    有用的网站, 221  
    相关书籍, 221  
其它选项, 67  
命令, 217  
在引导时改变运行级别, 220  
在引导过程中的角色, 224  
引导过程, 213  
改变运行级别, 216  
术语, 214  
    文件, 215  
    根文件系统, 216  
    设备, 214  
特性, 214  
界面, 216  
    命令行, 216  
    菜单, 216  
    菜单条编辑器, 216  
    顺序, 217  
菜单配置文件, 218  
    指令, 219  
配置文件  
    /boot/grub/grub.conf, 219  
    结构, 219  
grub.conf, 219  
(参见 GRUB)

## H

Hard disk  
    initializing, 39  
hard disk  
    basic concepts, 193  
    extended partitions, 196  
    分区, 193  
    分区简介, 194  
    分区类型, 196  
    文件系统格式, 193  
hard drive installation, 33

    preparing for, 14  
hardware  
    兼容性, 11  
hostname, 42  
HTTP  
    installation, 12, 35

## I

IDE 光盘  
    unrecognized, problems with, 32  
init 命令, 225  
(参见 引导过程)  
SysV init  
    定义, 228  
    在引导过程中的角色, 225  
    (参见 引导过程)  
运行级别  
    目录用于, 228  
运行级别存取, 228  
配置文件  
    /etc/inittab, 228  
installation  
    CD-ROM, 32  
    FTP, 12  
    GUI  
        CD-ROM, 25  
    hard drive, 14, 33  
    HTTP, 12, 35  
    kickstart (见 kickstart 安装)  
    mediacheck, 30  
    network, 12  
    NFS, 12, 35  
        服务器信息, 35  
    partitioning, 52  
    program  
        graphical user interface, 25  
        starting, 28  
        virtual consoles, 25  
        文本模式用户界面, 26  
    serial mode, 30  
        UTF-8, 30  
    starting, 32  
    text mode, 30  
    中止, 32  
    您可以使用 CD-ROM 或者 DVD 安装吗, 11  
    方法  
        CD-ROM, 31  
        hard drive, 31  
        NFS 映像, 31  
        selecting, 31  
        URL, 32

- 磁盘空间, 11
- 键盘导航, 28
- 问题
  - IDE 光盘相关的, 32
- installation program
  - x86, AMD64 and Intel 64
    - booting, 29
- IPv4, 42
- iscsi
  - installation, 49
- ISO images
  - 下载中, 3
- ISO 映像
  - 下载中, 1
- K**
- kernel options, 31
- keyboard
  - configuration, 38
  - 使用……导航安装程序, 28
- Kickstart, 90
- kickstart
  - 文件如何被找到, 131
- Kickstart Configurator, 137
  - %post 脚本, 158
  - %pre 脚本, 156
  - boot loader, 142
  - interactive, 139
  - keyboard, 138
  - language, 138
  - partitioning, 144
    - 软件 RAID, 146
  - reboot, 139
  - root password, 138
    - 加密, 138
  - SELinux 配置, 153
  - time zone, 138
  - 保存, 159
  - 基本配置, 138
  - 引导装载程序选项, 142
  - 文本模式安装, 139
  - 显示配置, 153
  - 网络配置, 149
  - 软件包选择, 155
  - 选择安装方法, 140
  - 防火墙配置, 151
  - 预览, 137
  - 验证选项, 150
- kickstart 安装, 107
  - LVM, 115
  - starting, 131
    - 从引导光盘中, 131
    - 使用软盘从第一张光盘中, 131
  - 基于光盘, 130
  - 基于网络, 130, 131
  - 基于软盘, 130
  - 基于闪存设备的, 130
  - 安装树, 131
  - 文件位置, 129
  - 文件格式, 107
- kickstart 文件
  - %include, 125
  - %post, 128
  - %pre, 127
  - auth, 109
  - authconfig, 109
  - autopart, 108
  - autostep, 109
  - bootloader, 110
  - clearpart, 111
  - cmdline, 111
  - creating, 108
  - device, 111
  - driverdisk, 112
  - firewall, 112
  - firstboot, 113
  - ignoredisk, 108
  - install, 113
  - interactive, 114
  - iscsi, 114
  - key, 114
  - keyboard, 115
  - langsupport, 115
  - logvol, 115
  - mediacheck, 116, 116, 122
  - multipath, 118
  - network, 117
  - part, 118
  - partition, 118
  - poweroff, 120
  - raid, 120
  - reboot, 122
  - rootpw, 122
  - selinux, 122
  - skipx, 123
  - text, 123
  - timezone, 123
  - vnc, 124
  - volgroup, 124
  - xconfig, 125
  - zerombr, 125
  - zfcpl, 125

- 
- ……的格式, 107
  - 关闭, 123
  - 关闭系统, 113
  - 包括另一个文件的内容, 125
  - 升级, 124
  - 图形化, 113
  - 基于光盘, 130
  - 基于网络, 130, 131
  - 基于软盘, 130
  - 基于闪存设备的, 130
  - 它的范例, 107
  - 安装后配置, 128
  - 安装方法, 113
  - 日志, 116
  - 服务, 123
  - 用户, 124
  - 语言, 115
  - 软件包选择的具体指定, 126
  - 选项, 108
    - 分区示例, 125
  - 预安装配置, 127
  - 鼠标, 117
- ## L
- language
    - selecting, 37
  - LILO, 224
    - (参见 引导装载程序)
    - 在引导过程中的角色, 224
  - LVM
    - documentation, 231
    - logical volume, 211
    - physical volume, 211
    - understanding, 211
    - volume group, 211
    - 和 kickstart, 115
- ## M
- master boot record, 64
  - Master Boot Record, 173 (见 MBR)
    - 重新安装, 175
  - MBR
    - 在……上安装引导装载程序, 66
    - 定义, 223, 223
      - (参见 引导装载程序)
      - (参见 引导过程)
  - memory testing mode, 93
  - modem, 42
- ## N
- network
    - installations
      - HTTP, 35
      - NFS, 35
    - network installation
      - performing, 34
      - preparing for, 12
    - NFS
      - installation, 12, 35
    - NFS (网络文件系统)
      - 从安装, 34
    - NTFS 分区
      - 重新设置大小, 1
    - NTP (Network Time Protocol), 44, 165
    - ntsysv, 229
      - (参见 服务)
- ## O
- OpenSSH, 231
    - (参见 SSH)
  - OS/2 引导管理器, 66
- ## P
- package groups, 71
  - packages
    - groups, 68
      - selecting, 68
    - installing, 68
    - selecting, 68
  - parted 分区工具, 200
  - partition
    - illegal, 54
    - root, 54
    - 扩展, 196
  - partitioning, 52
    - basic concepts, 193
    - creating new, 61
      - file system type, 62
    - extended partitions, 196
    - how many partitions, 195, 202
    - 为分区腾挪空间, 197
    - 主分区, 195
    - 介绍, 194
    - 使用未使用过的分区, 198
    - 使用正使用的分区, 198
    - 使用空闲空间, 197
    - 其它操作系统, 201
    - 分区的数字排序, 201
    - 分区类型, 196
    - 删除, 63
    - 挂载点和, 202
    - 推荐的, 58
-

- 破坏性, 198
- 给分区命名, 201
- 编辑, 63
- 自动, 50
- 非破坏性, 199
- Partitioning, 52
  - adding partitions
    - file system type, 62
  - 删除分区, 63
  - 按钮, 53
  - 编辑分区, 63
- PulseAudio, 231
- PXE (Pre-boot eXecution Environment), 23
- PXE installations
  - adding hosts, 100
  - boot message, custom, 102
  - configuration, 100
  - DHCP 配置, 102
  - overview, 100
  - performing, 102
  - setting up the network server, 100
- R**
- RAID
  - creating a software RAID, 53
  - hardware, 49
  - kickstart installations, 120
    - Kickstart Configurator, 146
  - partitioning a RAID, 53
  - software, 49
  - system unbootable after disk failure, 214
  - trouble booting from drive attached to RAID card, 75
- rc.local
  - 修改, 228
- rc.serial, 228
  - (参见 setserial 命令)
- rescue discs, 93
- rescue mode, 67, 93
- root password, 46
- S**
- scp, 231
  - (参见 SSH)
- selecting
  - packages, 68
- SELinux
  - documentation, 232
- serial console, 86
- setserial 命令
  - 配置, 228
- Setup Agent
  - 通过 kickstart, 113
- SSH (Secure SHell)
  - documentation, 231
- starting
  - installation, 28, 32
- steps
  - 使用 CD-ROM 或者 DVD 安装, 11
  - 硬件兼容性, 11
  - 磁盘空间, 11
- syslog, 89
- system-config-kickstart (见 Kickstart Configurator)
- SysV init (见 init 命令)
- T**
- TCP/IP 配置, 34
- Telnet, 88
- text interface, 86
- tftp, 102
- time zone
  - configuration, 44
- traceback messages
  - saving traceback messages without removeable media, 76, 76
- troubleshooting, 75
  - after the installation, 78
    - Sendmail 在启动时被挂起, 81
    - X 服务器崩溃, 79
    - X (X 窗口系统), 79
    - 内存不被识别, 80
    - 图形化 GRUB 屏幕, 78
    - 基于 Apache httpd 的服务在启动时挂起, 81
    - 声卡配置, 81
    - 引导至 GNOME 或 KDE, 78
    - 引导至 X 窗口系统, 78
    - 引导至图形环境, 78
    - 打印机, 81
    - 登录, 80
  - beginning the installation, 76
    - frame buffer, disabling, 76
    - GUI installation method unavailable, 76
  - booting, 75
    - RAID 卡, 75
    - 信号 11 错误, 75
- CD-ROM failure
  - CD-ROM verification, 14, 30
- during the installation, 76
  - completing partitions, 77
  - No devices found to install Fedora error message, 76
  - partition tables, 76, 76

---

Python 错误, 77  
saving traceback messages without removeable  
media, 76  
使用剩余硬盘驱动器空间, 77

## U

Update System, 169, 170  
USB pen 驱动器  
  启动方法, 12  
  驱动程序映像, 18  
USB 闪存介质  
  booting, 7  
  下载中, 3  
user interface, graphical  
  installation program, 25

## V

vfat (见 file systems)  
virtual consoles, 25  
Virtualization  
  documentation, 232  
VNC (Virtual Network Computing), 87  
  documentation, 231  
  listening mode, 88  
VNC (虚拟网络运算)  
  installing client, 87  
  启用, 87

## X

Xorg, 231

## Y

yum, 170  
  documentation, 232

